Oracle® Lease Management

Implementation Guide

Release 11*i*

Part No. B10647-07

February 2007

ORACLE®

Oracle Lease Management Implementation Guide, Release 11*i*

Part No. B10647-07

Contents

4   ERP Implementation Tasks

6 Lease Management Application Implementation Tasks

A   Profile Options

B   Seed Data

C   FND Lookup Types

D   Formula Engine

Glossary

Index

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Lease Management Implementation Guide, Release 11*i*

Part No. B10647-07

Oracle welcomes customers' comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document. Your feedback is important, and helps us to best meet your needs as a user of our products. For example:

*   Are the implementation steps correct and complete?
*   Did you understand the context of the procedures?
*   Did you find any errors in the information?
*   Does the structure of the information help you with your tasks?
*   Do you need different information or graphics? If so, where, and in what format?
*   Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, then please tell us your name, the name of the company who has licensed our products, the title and part number of the documentation and the chapter, section, and page number (if available).

Note: Before sending us your comments, you might like to check that you have the latest version of the document and if any concerns are already addressed. To do this, access the new Applications Release Online Documentation CD available on Oracle MetaLink and www.oracle.com. It contains the most current Documentation Library plus all documents revised or released recently.

Send your comments to us using the electronic mail address: appsdoc_us@oracle.com

Please give your name, address, electronic mail address, and telephone number (optional).

If you need assistance with Oracle software, then please contact your support representative or Oracle Support Services.

If you require training or instruction in using Oracle software, then please contact your Oracle local office and inquire about our Oracle University offerings. A list of Oracle offices is available on our Web site at www.oracle.com.

Preface

Intended Audience

Welcome to Release 11*i* of the *Oracle Lease Management Implementation Guide.*

This guide assumes you have a working knowledge of the following:

- The principles and customary practices of your business area.

- Oracle Lease Management

  If you have never used Oracle Lease Management, Oracle suggests you attend one or more of the Oracle Applications training classes available through Oracle University.

- Oracle Self-Service Web Applications

  To learn more about Oracle Self-Service Web Applications, read the *Oracle Self-Service Web Applications Implementation Manual*.

- Oracle Applications graphical user interface

  To learn more about the Oracle Applications graphical user interface, read the *Oracle Applications User's Guide*.

See Related Information Sources on page xiv for more Oracle Applications product information.

TTY Access to Oracle Support Services

Oracle provides dedicated Text Telephone (TTY) access to Oracle Support Services within the United States of America 24 hours a day, seven days a week. For TTY support, call 800.446.2398.

Documentation Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible, with good usability, to the disabled community. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Accessibility standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For more information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program Web site at http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/ .

Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation

Screen readers may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, some screen readers may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation

This documentation may contain links to Web sites of other companies or organizations that Oracle does not own or control. Oracle neither evaluates nor makes any representations regarding the accessibility of these Web sites.

Structure

1 Introduction
2 Implementation Overview
3 General Implementation Tasks
4 ERP Implementation Tasks
5 CRM Implementation Tasks
6 Lease Management Application Implementation Tasks
A Profile Options
B Seed Data
C FND Lookup Types
D Formula Engine
E Seeded Contract Classification Parameters
F Multi-GAAP Product Combinations
G Seeded Business Events For Lease Contract Authoring

Glossary

Related Information Sources

Oracle Lease Management shares business and setup information with other Oracle

Applications products. Therefore, you may want to refer to other guides when you set up and use Oracle Lease Management.

You can read the guides online by choosing Library from the expandable menu on your HTML help window, by reading from the Oracle Applications Document Library CD included in your media pack, or by using a Web browser with a URL that your system administrator provides.

If you require printed guides, you can purchase them from the Oracle Store at http://oraclestore.oracle.com.

Do Not Use Database Tools to Modify Oracle Applications Data

Oracle STRONGLY RECOMMENDS that you never use SQL*Plus, Oracle Data Browser, database triggers, or any other tool to modify Oracle Applications data unless otherwise instructed.

Oracle provides powerful tools you can use to create, store, change, retrieve, and maintain information in an Oracle database. But if you use Oracle tools such as SQL*Plus to modify Oracle Applications data, you risk destroying the integrity of your data and you lose the ability to audit changes to your data.

Because Oracle Applications tables are interrelated, any change you make using an Oracle Applications form can update many tables at once. But when you modify Oracle Applications data using anything other than Oracle Applications, you may change a row in one table without making corresponding changes in related tables. If your tables get out of synchronization with each other, you risk retrieving erroneous information and you risk unpredictable results throughout Oracle Applications.

When you use Oracle Applications to modify your data, Oracle Applications automatically checks that your changes are valid. Oracle Applications also keeps track of who changes information. If you enter information into database tables using database tools, you may store invalid information. You also lose the ability to track who has changed your information because SQL*Plus and other database tools do not keep a record of changes.

Part 1

Getting Started

1

Introduction

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Oracle Lease Management Overview
- Oracle Lease Management Business Flows

Oracle Lease Management Overview

Oracle Lease Management, an Oracle E-Business Suite application, integrates Oracle Financials applications and is designed to meet the business requirements of asset-based finance companies spanning the entire lease life cycle. The Oracle Lease Management solution extends from lease origination to contract termination and asset disposition.

A foundation of Oracle E-Business applications—General Ledger, Assets, Inventory, Payables, Order Management and Receivables—along with key customer relationship management applications such as CRM Foundation, Install Base, Credit Management, iStore and WorkFlow, underpin Oracle Lease Management.

Oracle Lease Management provides E-Business functions that can be described from at least two perspectives:

- Operations—that is, the daily tasks and responsibilities of people who work in various departments of finance companies, as well as

- Business Flows—the processes that every lease or loan goes through in its path over time, from beginning-to-end, from the lessor's point of view.

From the Operations perspective, people who manage lease contracts and assets define Oracle Lease Management functionality. From the Business Flow perspective, the processes that finance companies carry out across the entire company in the life cycle of a lease or loan, from inception to termination, also define Oracle Lease Management functionality.

Oracle Lease Management Business Flows

Oracle Lease Management attempts to present its many useful features according to equipment leasing industry key business flows. Features are arranged sequentially according to how they are used for typical tasks in a lease transaction.

Lead to Opportunity

Starting from a first potential business opportunity, Lease Management supports the effective matching of lessor or lender with lessee or borrower. A salesperson identifies a prospect's needs, identifies available assets, and provides alternative financing options to structure the lease and calculate the cost basis.

Once you have set up the marketing and program controls, you can process transactions and events through the lease life cycle using the objects you have defined. As you identify potential deals, you may need to provide sample pricing to qualify leads. Sample pricing can be performed without identifying a prospect party. Once you have identified the prospect and a specific lead, you can begin tracking the opportunity.

The opportunity provides a central repository for you to store information about other activities relating to the deal. It also provides a data structure that allows you to create sales forecasts.

Lease Sales Quote to Credit Decision

The Lease Sales Quote to Credit Decision process contains the Opportunity to Lease Sales Quote and the Lease Application to Booking process.

Once you identify a prospect and create an opportunity, more specific pricing may be generated. In addition to adding new pricing estimate scenarios on the Lease Opportunity, you create Lease Sales Quotes by selecting specific inventory items, fees, services and other quote adjustments to reflect the most accurate possible deal . You can then obtain pricing approvals and indicate prospect acceptance on a Lease Sales Quote. Only one lease quote may be accepted for a Lease Opportunity.

Origination to Funding

After parties agree upon a lease contract, the Lease or Loan Authoring functionality books the contract, creates financial streams, and enters journal entries.

When you select an asset, disbursements functionality deals with paying the vendor or dealer for the asset. Disbursements also pays for service and maintenance costs collected from the lessee and owed to a third-party provider.

The Origination to Funding processes take the lease sales quote through credit approval, vendor payment, contract authoring, and activation, to a booked lease or loan.

Oracle Lease Management uses Oracle Credit Management, Install Base, Assets, Inventory, Payables and General Ledger to manage the credit, origination, approval, contract authoring, vendor payment, and asset tracking functions. It performs stream generation and pricing, and interfaces with third-party lease financial and price modeling software.

Invoice to Receipt

After you activate a lease, billing functionality generates and sends invoices to lessees or borrowers. Often a lessee has assets at multiple locations under the same lease, and billing has the flexibility to account for many types of variations.

For example, one variation of billing is usage-based billing. This functionality provides billing based upon the usage of the asset as evidenced from meter readings.

Payments functionality allows either the lessor or the lessee to initiate the transfer of funds to pay invoices. Transfers occur in the form of a direct debit, check, wire transfer, credit card, and so on. The Payment process searches for the appropriate invoice to apply the funds and creates accounting entries upon application of funds to the invoices.

As a result of a missed payment, a collection effort may be initiated. Collections and litigation functionality manages the collection process from the point of initially identifying a delinquent customer to the end of the delinquency.

Quote to Termination

The Quote to Termination functionality manages repurchase, restructure, and contract termination alternatives when the lease or loan expires. Oracle Lease Management processes restructured contracts through contract authoring, stream generation, analysis, and approvals used in contract authoring, to activation and booking.

When you accept a termination quote for sale, assets are retired in Oracle Assets. Oracle Lease Management also supports partial terminations and uses Oracle Receivables, Credit Management, Assets, CRM Foundation, WorkFlow, and General Ledger to manage the Quote to Termination functions

Oracle Lease Management handles requests for renewals, or termination quotes, by initiating a quote for terminating the lease, identifying the formula, calculating, storing, consolidating and modifying the termination quote. When you complete the quote several transactions are managed, including Approve termination request, Complete contract termination, and Update asset records.

Asset Return to Disposal

The last step in the lease transaction, remarketing the used assets, manages the disposition of assets upon expiration of a lease contract, at repossession, or at early termination. This functionality manages the remarketing process, whether by sale of the asset to a third-party remarketer, or by internal remarketing efforts.

The Asset Return to Disposal features handle asset returns, remarketing, and sales. This functionality supports shipping instructions and asset evaluation processes for returned assets. Returns may be accounted for as scrap, repurchases, or inventory to be remarketed. Oracle Lease Management enables the remarketer to establish prices, bill for costs incurred, calculate third-party commissions, and adjust inventory quantities and status for tracking.

Period Open to Close

After a lease contract is agreed upon, the Lease or Loan Authoring functionality books the contract and creates and enters financial streams and journal entries.

The Accounting processes from Period Open to Close enable accruals, loss provisions, write-downs, periodic adjustments, and journal entries specific to the asset-based finance industry.

Inquiry to Resolution

The Inquiry to Resolution processes start with initial contact from employees, customers, vendors, and partners to the Lease Center. A customer service representative logs and tracks an inquiry through its satisfactory resolution, which is then communicated to the appropriate designated parties.

You define processes to manage specific requests, such as insurance quotes, claims, insurance cancellation, contract transfers, equipment exchanges, asset modifications, and lease renewals. You may enable customer and vendor self service.

Investor Agreements

Investor management is supported by Oracle Lease Management by recording investor agreements that provide for syndication and securitization. In addition, Lease Management provides investor billing and disbursement features.

Vendor Programs

Vendor management is supported by Oracle Lease Management in terms of recording vendor program agreements, cure and repurchase tracking, and vendor self service features.

Part 2

Implementing Oracle Lease Management

2

Implementation Overview

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Implementation Steps Checklists
- Implementation Steps in Oracle Applications
- Implementation Steps Primarily in Oracle Lease Management

Implementation Steps Checklists

The main topics of this section are:

- Implementation Steps in Oracle Applications

- Implementation Steps Primarily in Oracle Lease Management

Implementation Steps in Oracle Applications

The checklists in this section describe setup steps for Oracle Applications generally, mostly in specific applications outside of Oracle Lease Management, so that you can use the many fully integrated features of Oracle Lease Management.

This section includes the following topics and tables:

System Administration Steps

- Oracle System Administration

- Oracle General Ledger

- Oracle Set of Books

Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) Steps

- Oracle Assets

- Oracle Inventory

- Oracle Order Management

- Oracle Receivables

- Oracle Payables

- Oracle Purchasing

- Oracle Installed Base

Customer Relationship Management (CRM) Steps

- Oracle Contracts

- Oracle Service Contracts

- Oracle iStore, Order Capture, and Marketing Online

- Oracle CRM Foundation

- Oracle Telephony and Work Queue

System Administration Steps

The tables in this section list steps relating to system administration and setting up general ledgers and sets of books.

- Oracle System Administration

- Oracle General Ledger

- Oracle Set of Books

The following table includes steps relating to system administration.

Oracle System Administration

Task	Required or Optional
Perform System Administration Tasks, page 3-1	Required
Define Responsibilities	Optional

Task	Required or Optional
Define Employees	Required
Define Users	Required
Define Lookups	Optional
Define Profile Options	Optional
Set Up Document Sequencing	Optional
Set Up Concurrent Managers	Optional

The following table includes steps relating to setting up General Ledger.

Oracle General Ledger

Task	Required or Optional
Set Up General Ledger, page 3-13	Required.
Set Up Set of Books, page 3-13	Required.
Define Chart of Accounts	Required.
Define Calendar	Required.
Define Functional Currency	Required.
Define Currency Conversion Types and Rates	Required if using more than one currency.

The following table includes steps relating to setting up Set of Books.

Oracle Set of Books

Task	Required or Optional
Define Set of Books, page 3-17	

Task	Required or Optional
Assign Set of Books to a Responsibility, page 3-17	Required.
Define Manual Journals	Required.
Define Journal Categories	Required.
Define Journal Sources	Required.
Define Open General Ledger Calendar Periods	Required.
Define Contract Numbering	Required. But some features of Oracle Contracts autonumbering do not apply to Lease Management: contract number modifier for renewed contracts, and some user functions.

Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) Steps

The tables in this section list steps relating to ERP implementation.

- Oracle Assets

- Oracle Inventory

- Oracle Order Management

- Oracle Receivables

- Oracle Payables

- Oracle Purchasing

- Oracle Installed Base

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Assets.

Oracle Assets

Task	Optional or Required
Define Assets, page 4-1	Required
Define General Asset Information, page 4-1	Required
Define System Controls	Required
Define Location Flexfield	Required
Define Asset Depreciation, page 4-3	Required
Define Calendars	Required.
Define Fiscal Years	Required.
Define Depreciation Methods	Required.
Define Prorate and Retirement Conventions	Required.
Define Book Controls	Required.
Define Book Controls	Required.
Define Asset Category Flexfield	Required.
Define Asset Categories	Required.
Set Up Assets for Like-Kind Exchange	Optional.
Define Asset Book for Multi-GAAP Reporting	Required for Multi-GAAP reporting.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Inventory.

Oracle Inventory

Task	Optional or Required
Define Inventory, page 4-9	Required.

Task	Optional or Required
Define Item Flexfield	Required.
Define Item Categories Flexfield	Required.
Define Item Catalog Groups	Required.
Define Inventory Organizations	Required.
Change Organizations	Required.
Define Unit of Measure Classes	Required.
Define Subinventories	Required.
Define Categories	Required.
Define Category Set	Required.
Define Default Category Set	Required.
Define Statuses	Required: Create status Lease and clear all its associated attributes.
Define Item Type for Insurance Products	Required: Associate to profile option OKL: Insurance Item Type.
Define Items	Required: Set up Lease items, and more. Associate asset categories with items.
Define Remarketing Items with Web Attributes	Required for web access: Update item attributes to enable.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Order Management.

Oracle Order Management

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up Order Management Several phases, including General Ledger, Receivables, Inventory.	Required: For Remarketing, iStore, Lease Management processing, and asset management updates.
Set Up Transaction Types, page 4-24	Required to sell inventory items through iStore.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Receivables.

Oracle Receivables

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up Oracle Receivables, page 4-26	Required.
Define Line Transaction Flexfield Structure	Required.
Define Payment Terms	Required.
Open Accounting Periods	Required.
Define AutoAccounting	Required.
Define Transaction Types, page 4-31	Required.
Define Transaction Type Invoice	Required.
Define Transaction Type Credit Memo	Required.
Set Up Grouping Rules for Invoices, page 4-34	Required.
Specify Grouping Rules	Required.
Attach Grouping Rules to Batch Source	Required.
Define Transaction Sources	Required.

Task	Optional or Required
Define Remittance Banks	Required.
Define Receipt Classes	Required.
Define Payment Methods	Required.
Define Aging Buckets	Required for loss provision functionality.
Define System Options	Required.
Define Tax Options	Required.
Define Receivables Lookups, page 4-45	Required.
Define the Pricing Engine as a Customer in Oracle Receivables, page 6-110	Required. Also see Table 3–17, "Oracle XML Gateway"

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Payables.

Oracle Payables

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up Payables, page 4-48	Required.
Define Payment Terms	Required.
Define Payables Lookups	Required.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Purchasing.

Oracle Purchasing

Task	Optional or Required
Define Purchasing Lookups, page 4-51	Required.
Define Suppliers	Required.

Task	Optional or Required
Define Insurance Providers	Required.
Set Up Document Sequencing of Payables Invoices, page 4-53	Required.
Create Document Sequence	Required.
Define Category	Required.
Assign Category and Sequence	Required.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Installed Base.

Oracle Installed Base

Task	Optional or Required
Perform standard set up of counters and groups.	Required for usage-based billing. See Consolidated Billing, *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*. Also see Oracle Service Contracts documentation.

Customer Relationship Management (CRM) Steps

The tables in this section list steps relating to CRM implementation.

• Oracle Contracts

• Oracle Service Contracts

• Oracle iStore, Order Capture, and Marketing Online

• Oracle CRM Foundation

• Oracle Telephony and Work Queue

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Contracts.

.

Oracle Contracts

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up Contracts, page 5-1	Required.
Add Articles	Required: Lease Management supports standard articles, only.
Add Additional Quality Assurance Checks	Optional: You may add processes to the OKL LA QA CHECK LIST, but not create new Quality Assurance Checklists.
Set Up New User-Defined Parties For Lease Contracts and Agreements	Required if you are using your own user-defined party roles.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Service Contracts.

Oracle Service Contracts

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up Service Contracts Counters, page 5-4	Required for usage-based billing. See Consolidated Billing, *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*. Also see Oracle Installed Base documentation.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle iStore, Order Capture, and Marketing Online.

Oracle iStore, Order Capture, and Marketing Online

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up iStore, page 5-5	Required for standard remarketing.
Set Up Speciality Stores	Required for standard remarketing of assets.
Set Up Order Capture	Required for the standard remarketing process.

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up Marketing Online	Optional: Allows targeting customers for remarketing specific types of assets, and more.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle CRM Foundation.

Oracle CRM Foundation

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up CRM Foundation	Required
Set Up and Configure Interaction History	Required. You may optionally define additional codes modifications.
Setup and Configure Fulfillment	Required.
Set Up Notes, page 5-10	Optional, but must be at least enabled to use notes in the Lease Center (customer service).
Set Up Territories	Required.
Set Up Resources	Required. (Employees are resources. Organize them into groups, define roles, etc.)
Define Sales Representatives	Optional.
Define Remarketers	Required.
Define Assignment Group	Required.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Telephony and Work Queue.

Oracle Telephony and Work Queue

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up Telephony, page 5-16	Optional.

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up Work Queues, page 5-16	Optional.

Implementation Steps Primarily in Oracle Lease Management

The following checklist tables describe Oracle Lease Management implementation steps, most of which are performed on the Oracle Lease Management user interface pages.

- Set Up Steps In Oracle Lease Management

- Oracle XML Gateway

- Oracle Workflow

Set Up Steps In Oracle Lease Management

Task	Optional or Required
Define Streams and Pricing, page 6-2	Optional.
Set up Additional Streams Types For Fees, Expenses, Subsidies, and Subsidy Accruals	Optional.
Associate Financial Products to Lease Price Modeling Software Templates	Optional.
Set up Pricing Parameters	Optional.
Set Up Parameter Conversions For Third-Party Lease Price Modeling Software	Optional.
Set Up Book Type Mapping For Third-Party Lease Price Modeling Software	Optional.
Set Up Item Residual Values for Creating Quotes Automatic: 2 steps Manual: 4 steps	Required. For all pricing methods.

Task	Optional or Required
Set Up Lease Rate Sets for Creating Quotes Several steps.	Optional.
Define Formula, page 6-17	Optional.
Define Formula Functions	Optional.
Define Non-Standard Function Parameters	Optional.
Define Contexts	Optional.
Define Formula Operands	Optional.
Define Formula	Optional.
Define Formula and Formula String	Optional.
Define Formula Operand Label	Optional.
Define Accounting Options, page 6-24	Required.
Define Lease Accounting Templates	Required.
Define Accounting Template Sets	Required.
Define Accounting Templates	Required.
Define Accounting Template Lines	Required.
Define Accounting Options, page 6-24	Optional.
Define Account Generator Sources	Optional.
Define Account Generator Rules	Optional.
Define Financial Products	Optional.
Define Template Quality Name and Value	Optional.

Task	Optional or Required
Define Qualities Name and Values	Optional.
Define Options and Option Values	Optional.
Define a Product Template	Required.
Define a Product	Required.
Define Invoice Group Parameters, page 6-59	Required.
Create an Invoice Group	Required.
Create an Invoice Type	Required.
Create an Invoice Line Type	Required.
Specify a Default Invoice Line Type	Required.
Set up Interest Rates	Required.
Define Late Charges Parameters, page 6-66	Required.
Create Late Policies	Required.
Create Late Interest Policy	Required.
Create Late Charge Policy	Required.
Define Cash Search and Cash Application Rules, page 6-70	Required.
Define Invoice Search Rule	Required.
Edit Search Rules	Optional.
Define Cash Application Rules, page 6-75	Required.
Set up or Edit Search Rules (Receipt Mismatch Rules)	Required.

Task	Optional or Required
Set up or Edit Underpayment Rules	Required.
Set up or Edit Overpayment Rules	Required.
Set up or Edit Tolerance Rules	Required.
Set up or Edit Termination Quote Tolerance Rules	Required.
Define Customer Service Setups, page 6-81	Required.
Define Fulfillment Mapping	Required.
Define Service Fees	Optional.
Define Remarketing Functionality, page 6-85	Required.
Create Remarketer Assignments	Required.
Define Repair Costs	Required.
Define Lease Income Accrual Rules	Required.
Define Loss Provision Rules, page 6-89	Required.
Set up Loss Provision Rates	Required.
Define Off-Lease Asset Amortization Rules, page 6-90	Required.
Define Off-Lease Asset Hold Periods	Required.
Create Asset Category/Asset Book Combinations	Optional.
Define Insurance, page 6-100	Required.
Set up Insurance Item Type Profile Option	Required.

Task	Optional or Required
Define Insurance Class Lookups	Required.
Define Insurer Ranking	Required.
Define Insurance Products	Required.
Define Insurance Asset Classes	Required.
Define Insurance Rates	Required.
Define Insurance Exclusions	Optional.
Define Parameters for Automatic Placement Business Rules	Required.

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle XML Gateway.

Oracle XML Gateway

Task	Optional or Required
Set up Pricing Engine Integration for Stream Generation, page 6-110	Required.
Define the Pricing Engine as a Customer in Oracle Receivables	Required. Also see Set Up Oracle Receivables, page 4-26
Define Profile Options	Required. For XML & Streams.
Define Trading Partner and Transaction Types, page 6-112	Required.
Create a Trading Partner	Required.
Set up Outbound Transaction Types	Required.
Set up Inbound Transaction Types	Required.

Task	Optional or Required
Schedule Pricing Time Out Concurrent Program	Required.
Schedule Purge Pricing Program	

The following table includes steps relating to Oracle Workflow.

Oracle Workflow

Task	Optional or Required
Define Workflow, page 6-118	Optional.
Modify Order Management Workflow to Enable Remarketing	Required.

3

General Implementation Tasks

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Perform System Administration Tasks
- Set Up General Ledger
- Set Up Set of Books
- Define Manual Journals
- Define Contract Numbering

Perform System Administration Tasks

When you install Oracle Lease Management and all the Oracle applications that it depends on, many database tables include *required* data values to run Oracle Lease Management processes.

The implementation of Oracle Lease Management is a series of steps that you perform after you install the Lease Management software. You perform about half of the tasks in other Oracle applications, and then you do most of the remaining tasks in Oracle Lease Management itself.

These implementation steps require data that is specific to your particular company or organization. After you have completed all the implementation steps, you can start to use the full functionality of Oracle Lease Management.

Most of this manual is concerned with detailing these implementation steps and the sequence in which you should perform them. This chapter describes the more general tasks, which are either required or optional as indicated.

Required Tasks

Required tasks include:

- Define Responsibilities

- Define Employees

- Define Users

Optional Tasks

Optional tasks, which you can perform at any stage of implementing Oracle Lease Management, include:

- Define Lookups

- Define Profile Options

- Set Up Document Sequencing

- Set Up Concurrent Managers

Define Responsibilities

Optional

Responsibilities control the presentation of menus, tabs, and pages within Oracle Application's products.

On installation, Oracle Lease Management creates several responsibilities. Each of these seeded responsibilities enables a different type of user to fulfill job-oriented real-world requirements when connected to Oracle Lease Management. For example, the Accounts Controller responsibility allows many lease-specific set up facilities, while the Asset Manager responsibility concerns only certain asset-related features.

Use Oracle Applications System Administration to create responsibilities to:

- Create one or more responsibilities to restrict users to specific functions and data when they use Oracle Lease Management, or

- Combine the options of several other responsibilities.

To create one or more responsibilities to either restrict users to specific functions and data when they use Oracle Lease Management or to combine the options of several other responsibilities, use Oracle Applications System Administration to create such responsibilities.

For more information, see the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide.*

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

System Administration

Navigation

Security > Responsibility > Define

Define Employees

Required

Several areas of Oracle Lease Management require that certain personnel are registered as employees. For example, Oracle Lease Management uses Oracle Workflow to notify and request authorizations from different employees.

For this example, and for all the other areas, if you have not already done so, you must create employees using Oracle HRMS—Human Resources Management System.

For more information, see the *Using Oracle HRMS - The Fundamentals* document.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Human Resources Administrator (or equivalent)

Module

Oracle HRMS

Navigation

People > Enter and Maintain

Define Users

Required

You must define one or more application users. An application user is an authorized user of any Oracle application, such as Oracle Lease Management. Each application user has a unique application user name.

Once you have defined application users, they can sign on to Oracle Applications and

access data through Oracle Applications windows. During the process of creating application users, you give users one or more responsibilities so that they can perform the tasks they require within Oracle Lease Management.

For more information, see Create an Oracle Applications User to Complete Setting Up, the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide.*

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

System Administration

Navigation

Security > User > Define

> **Note:** As you create an application user, when that user is also an employee, you must associate the user name with an employee name. Use the Person field in the Users window to enter the name of the employee.

Customer Self Service User Setup

Before customers can use Customer Self Service, they must be granted access. To set up customers to use Customer Self Service, perform the following tasks in the System Administrator responsibility:

System Administrator Responsibilities Tab Tasks

Perform the following steps:

- Create a new user for each customer; a particular customer may have multiple users.

- Assign the Lease Management Customer Self Service responsibility to users. **Note:** Oracle Lease Management appears as the Application and Description.

- Enter Effective dates.

System Administrator Securing Attributes Tab Tasks

Perform the following steps:

- Associate each user to a customer account by setting an attribute value that points to your customer's account number. From the Securing Attributes tab of the Users window of the System Administrator responsibility, enter OKL_CUSTOMER_ACCOUNT_N in the Attribute field. **Note:** Oracle Self-Service Web Application appears as the Application name.

- Select a Customer Account Number from the list of values for the Value.

For information on user management and responsibilities, see Oracle User Management, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*.

Vendor Self Service User Setup

Before vendors can use Vendor Self Service, they must be granted access. To set up vendors to use Vendor Self Service, perform the following tasks in the System Administrator responsibility:

System Administrator Users Responsibilities Tasks

Perform the following steps:

- Create a new user for each vendor; a particular vendor may have multiple users.

- Assign the Lease Management Vendor Self Service responsibility to users. **Note:** Oracle Lease Management appears as the Application and Description.

- Enter Effective dates.

System Administrator Users Securing Attributes Tasks

Perform the following steps:

- Associate each user to a Vendor account by setting an attribute value that points to your Vendor's account number. From the Securing Attributes tab of the Users window of the System Administrator responsibility, enter ICX_SUPPLIER_CONTACT_ID in the Attribute field. **Note:** Oracle Self-Service Web Application appears as the Application name.

- Select a Supplier Contact ID from the list of values for the Value.

For information on user management and responsibilities, see Oracle User Management, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*.

Define Lookups

Optional

Lookup names are list of value choices that exist throughout Oracle applications to help you select data quickly and accurately. You can modify menus or lists of certain fields, such as when you want to add your own custom choices to field options.

To create or modify any lookup types and lookup names that relate to Oracle Lease Management, you must have the Application Developer responsibility within Oracle Applications.

For more information, see the *Oracle Applications User's Guide.*

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Application Developer

Module

Application Object Library

Navigation

Application > Lookups > Application Object Library

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Log in as Application Developer

2. Using the AOL lookup forms, query the lookup codes:

   - Termination Quote reasons: OKL_QUOTE_REASON

   - Repurchase Quote reasons: OKL_QUOTE_REASON

   - Asset Return Statuses: OKL_ASSET_RETURN_STATUS

3. Input user defined values to create your own values.

Credit Checklists Example

Define item codes for the items on checklists, in two different categories: one for credit line approval checklists, and another for funding request approval checklists.

To set up new Application Object Library Lookups for Checklists:

1. Log into Oracle Applications (Forms) with responsibility Application Developer.

2. Navigate to Application > Lookups > Application Object Library, to set up your Checklist Lookups.

3. In the Type field, enter the name of your checklist lookup, for example:

   OKL_TODO_CREDIT_CHKLST or OKL_TODO_FUNDING_CHKLST

4. In the Meaning field, enter the meaning of your checklist lookup.

5. In the Application field, enter Oracle Lease Management

6. In the Description field, enter the description of your checklist.

7. In the Access Level field, select Extensible radio button.

Associate item codes to the checklist items by adding new items to the checklists:

1. In the Code field, enter a name for the code; for example, SAMPLE1.

2. In the Meaning field, enter a meaning for the item; for example Document A.

3. In the Description field, enter a description for this item.

4. In the From field, enter the start date for this item.

5. Repeat steps 8-11 for each item to be added to your checklist.

6. Click Save, to save your work. Return to step 3 to create more checklists types.

You are likely to want to create at least one credit checklist and one funding request checklist. You may also want to create several types of checklists to reflect more restrictive or more lenient customer credit qualifying processes depending on your business practices. For the next steps in setting up checklists, see Set Up Credit Checklists.

Define Profile Options

Profile options specify how to control access to and process data. You can set profile options at one or more of these levels: site, application, responsibility, and user.

In general, users can view their own profile options and modify updatable options. Certain responsibilities allow you to see and possibly modify your own user profile options.

> **Note:** During the implementation phase of Oracle Lease Management,

the levels at which you can consider changing your profile options are the application and responsibility level.

To create or update profile options at any level, you must have the System Administrator responsibility within Oracle Applications.

For more information, see the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide.*

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

System Administrator, for multi-level profile option access

A user's logon that allows personal profile option changes

Module

System Administration (for System Administrator responsibility)

Navigation

For System Administrator access: Profile > System

The navigation for users to view and change their own profile options varies according to their non-System Administrator responsibility. For example, the path for the Inventory Administrator is Setup > Profiles > Personal, and the path for the Payables Administrator is Other > Profile.

Example: Set the Default Order Type

To enable remarketing functionality in Oracle Lease Management, you must set the "ASO : Default Order Type" to "OKL_Standard."

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Profile window, the Site, select the Application and Responsibility check boxes.

2. Enter "Oracle Order Capture" as the Application and "IBE_CUSTOMER" as the Responsibility.

3. In the Profile field, enter "ASO%" and click the Find button.

4. Scroll down to "ASO : Default Order Type" profile option and choose

"OKL_Standard" as the value at the Site and Responsibility levels.

5. Save your work.

Guidelines

The example procedure, Set the Default Order Type, provides steps for setting a mandatory value for one profile option. Oracle Lease Management uses many profile options. To see a complete listing of profile options, see Appendix A.

Set Up Document Sequencing

Required

To enable automatic numbering for consolidated invoices in Oracle Lease Management you must set up document sequencing for each set of books.

A document sequence uniquely numbers documents that Oracle Lease Management generates. You start a transaction by entering data through a form that generates a document, such as an invoice. A document sequence generates an audit trail that identifies the application that created the transaction, such as Oracle Lease Management, and the original generated document, for example, invoice number 1234.

You also must set up document sequencing to the Transaction Type Document you set up in order to sell Inventory items through Oracle iStore during remarketing.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

System Administration (for System Administrator responsibility)

Navigation

For System Administrator: Application > Document > Define

Steps

For Consolidated Invoice document sequencing, follow these steps:

1. Enter a unique name or number for each set of books. In the sequence name field, enter, for example, "OKL Lease Receipt Invoices - Vision Operations."

2. In the Application field, choose Oracle Lease Management.

This is the application that owns the document sequence.

3. Set the Effective From date and, optionally, the Effective To date.

4. In the Type field, choose Automatic.

   Automatic numbering assigns a unique number to each document as it is generated. Automatic numbering, which is used in Oracle Lease Management, is sequential by date and time of creation.

5. Set the Initial Value for the Document sequence.

   This is the number which with you want the sequence to start. The default value is 1.

6. Save your work. Repeat steps 1 through 6 for each set of books' unique sequence name (or number).

7. Switch to the Categories menu and choose Oracle Lease Management in the Application field.

8. In the Code field, enter the sequence code you defined in steps 1-6, for example, "OKL Lease Receipt Invoices - Vision Operations."

9. In the Category Name field, enter, for example: OKL Lease Receipt Invoices - Vision Operations.

10. Enter a brief Description of the category.

11. In the Table field, enter the exact value: OKL_CNSLD_AR_HDRS_B.

12. Save your work. Repeat for each set of books' unique sequence name (or number).

13. Switch to the Assign menu and choose the Document tab.

14. Choose Oracle Lease Management in the Application field.

15. In the Category field, enter the previously defined sequence code, for example, OKL Lease Receipt Invoices - Vision Operations..

16. Choose your set of books.

17. In the Method field, choose Automatic.

18. Click the Assignment tab and in the Application field, choose Oracle Lease Management.

19. In the Category field, enter, for example, OKL Lease Receipt Invoices - Vision Operations.

20. If you want the assignment to have start and end dates, enter them in the appropriate fields.

21. In the Sequence field, enter the sequence name or number you defined in Step 1, OKL Lease Receipt Invoices - Vision Operations.

22. Save your work. Repeat for each set of books' unique sequence name (or number).

Set Up Document Sequencing for Transaction Type Document

Follow these steps to set up document sequencing for the Transaction Type Document that you created for Oracle Order Management functionality, which lets remarketed assets to be resold through Oracle iStore:

1. Check if the sequence is already defined by querying "OKL_Standard" in the name field. If the query doesn't return any data, then the sequence is not defined.

2. To create the sequence, in the Name field enter "OKL_Standard."

3. In the Application field, choose Oracle Order Management from the list of values.

4. Enter a Start Date.

5. Optionally, enter an End Date. (Leave this field Null if this sequence is open ended.)

6. In the Type field, choose Automatic.

7. Select the Message box.

8. In the Initial Value field, enter 1.

9. Save your work.

Assign the Document Sequence to the Transaction Type Document

Follow these steps to assign the document sequence to the Transaction Type Document that you just created:

1. Check if the document record is already defined. In the Document tab, query "OKL_Standard" in the Category field. If the query doesn't return any data, then the sequence is not defined.

2. To create the record, in the Application field choose Oracle Order Management from the list of values.

3. In the Category field, choose OKL_Standard from the list of values

4. In the Set of Books field, choose your enterprise's set of books from the list of values.

5. Leave the Method field null.

6. Click the Assignment tab and, if the assignment does not already exist, enter the appropriate values.

7. In the Application field, choose Oracle Order Management from the list of values.

8. In the Category field, choose OKL_Standard from the list of values.

9. Enter a Start Date.

10. To leave the assignment open ended, leave the End Date field empty.

11. In the Sequence field, choose OKL_Standard from the list of values.

12. Save your work.

Guidelines

If a sequence is defined, make sure that it contains the appropriate information outlined in the steps above.

For complete details on setting up document sequencing and assigning a sequence to a set of documents, see the Document Sequences chapter of the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

Set Up Concurrent Managers

Optional

Oracle Lease Management uses concurrent programs for a variety of processing including billing cycles, running periodic check for lease insurance coverage, and many others. For a complete list of concurrent programs, see the *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*.

To use scheduling capabilities, then you can define additional concurrent managers to share the workload.

Concurrent Processing is a feature of Oracle Applications that lets you perform multiple tasks simultaneously. Oracle Applications Concurrent Processing lets you run long, data-dependent functions at the same time as your users perform online operations. Concurrent managers are components of concurrent processing that monitor and run your time-consuming tasks without tying up your computers.

Oracle Applications automatically installs one standard concurrent manager that can run every request. You can take advantage of the flexibility of concurrent managers to control throughput on your system. You can define as many concurrent managers as you need. Keep in mind, however, that each concurrent manager consumes additional memory.

You can specialize each of your concurrent managers so that they run all requests, requests submitted by a particular user, requests submitted by a particular application,

or other constraints, or any combination of these constraints. If you are using Parallel Concurrent Processing in a cluster, a massively parallel, or a homogeneous network environment, you should register your Nodes and then assign your concurrent managers to primary and secondary nodes. You can spread your concurrent managers, and therefore your concurrent processing, across all available nodes to fully utilize hardware resources.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

System Administration (for System Administrator responsibility)

Navigation

For System Administrator: Concurrent > Manager > Define

See the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

Set Up General Ledger

In order for Oracle General Ledger to function properly with Oracle Lease Management, you must ensure that you complete the following setup steps within Oracle General Ledger:

- Define Open General Ledger Calendar Periods

- Define Journal Categories

- Define Journal Sources

Set Up Set of Books

You must define at least one set of books before you can implement Oracle Lease Management. When defining a set of books, you must define a chart of accounts, define a calendar, and define a functional currency. The set of books associated to the user through profile options is the ledger into which accounting entries created in Oracle Lease Management are written.

The implementation topics for the Set of Books are:

- Define Chart of Accounts

- Define Calendar

- Define Currency Conversion Types and Rates

- Define Set of Books

- Assign Set of Books to a Responsibility

Define Chart of Accounts

Required

A chart of accounts defines the different dimensions in which you can review the accounting information. Before you begin, consider your organizational structure and the dimensions of your business. By carefully evaluating your business needs, you can design your chart of accounts to take advantage of General Ledger's flexible tools for recording and reporting your accounting information. You must then specify the accounting dimensions by creating your accounting flexfield and, for each segment, a value set and values.

See the *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*. Also see the *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

General Ledger Super User

Module

Oracle General Ledger

Navigation

Setup > Financials > Flexfield > Key > Segments

Define Calendar

Required

Create a calendar to define an accounting year and the periods it contains. You can define multiple calendars and assign a different calendar to each set of books. For example, you can use a monthly calendar for one set of books, and a quarterly calendar for another.

See the *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

General Ledger Super User

Module

Oracle General Ledger

Navigation

Setup > Financials > Calendar > Accounting

Define Functional Currency

Required

Define the functional currency for your set of books, or enable one of the defined ISO (International Standards Organization) currencies. Also, define or enable any additional currencies you plan to use.

Perform this step only once per set of books.

> **Note:** All formulas defined within Oracle Lease Management return values in the *contract* currency, not the functional currency associated with the set of books.

For more information, see the *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

General Ledger Super User

Module

Oracle General Ledger

Navigation

Setup > Currencies > Define

Define Currency Conversion Types and Rates

Required for organizations using more than one currency.

Define the currency conversion types that are permitted for your organization, and set up the rates.

Multi-currency requirements

Some organizations have lease or loan contracts, and other related objects, such as credit lines and quotes, where the contract currency is different from the organization's functional currency. To satisfy the multi-currency requirement, you must specify a conversion type when you create the contract, credit line or quote.

When you create an Oracle Lease Management credit line, quote, or contract, and the contract currency is different from the organization's functional currency, you can select the currency conversion type as follows:

- Either select "User" as the conversion type, and then you also directly specify the currency conversion rate on the data entry screen

- Or select one of the currency conversion types that you defined in Oracle General Ledger

Two standard Oracle General Ledger currency conversion types are Spot and Corporate. You may define further currency conversion types.

Subsequently, as required, you should set up daily and period rates for the currency conversion types that you will use when you create the dependent objects in Oracle Lease Management.

For more information, see the *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Prerequisites

You have defined and enabled all the currencies to be specified in the currency conversion types.

Responsibility

General Ledger Super User

Module

Oracle General Ledger

Navigation

Setup > Currencies > Rates > Types

Define Set of Books

Required

A set of books is a general ledger. You can set up multiple general ledgers. Define each set of books with a unique name and associate the set of books with a chart of accounts, a calendar, and a functional currency.

For more information, see the *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define functional currency.

Define chart of accounts.

Define calendar.

Responsibility

General Ledger Super User

Module

Oracle General Ledger

Navigation

Setup > Financials > Books > Define

Assign Set of Books to a Responsibility

Required

Before you can use a newly defined set of books, your system administrator must associate the set of books with one or more responsibilities. This is done by setting the value of the profile option GL Set of Books Name at the responsibility level. Your responsibility determines which set of books you use.

For more information, see the *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define set of books.

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

System Administration

Navigation

Profile > System

Define Manual Journals

To set up your manual journals, you must:

- Define Journal Categories

- Define Journal Sources

- Define Open General Ledger Calendar Periods

Define Journal Categories

Required with defaults

Journal categories help you differentiate journal entries by purpose or type, such as accrual, payments, or receipts. When you enter journals, you specify a category. You can define intercompany and suspense accounts for specific categories. You can also use document sequences to sequentially number journal entries by category. Journal categories appear in standard reports, such as the General Journals report.

For more information, see the *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

General Ledger Super User

Module

Oracle General Ledger

Navigation

Setup > Journal > Categories

Define Journal Sources

Required

Journal sources identify the origin of journal entries. General Ledger supplies a number of defined journal sources. Define at least one journal source for each of your own, non–Oracle feeder systems to help you track imported journal entries.

For more information, see the *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

General Ledger Super User

Module

Oracle General Ledger

Navigation

Setup > Journal > Sources

Define Open General Ledger Calendar Periods

Required

Open and close accounting periods to control journal entry and journal posting, as well as to compute period– and year–end account balances for reporting.

See the *Oracle General Ledger User Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define your calendar.

Responsibility

General Ledger Super User

Module

Oracle General Ledger

Navigation

Setup > Open/Close

Define Contract Numbering

You can use the contract autonumbering feature to automatically generate the contract number upon creating a new contract. The autonumbering feature offers you flexibility in defining how to number contracts. Contract numbers can be either sequential numbers or a combination of defined prefix and suffix alpha-numeric characters to classify a contract based on its attributes. These attributes can include:

- Site

- Business Group

- Operating Unit

- Class

- Category

You can set up auto-number classification using a prefix and suffix with a contract number. Use of a prefix and suffix is optional. Autonumbering of contracts is helpful in a scenario where you have:

- Entered or imported contracts from an external source or system.

- Built contracts from another document.

- Entered contract data manually.

A few automatic contract numbering features mentioned in the *Oracle Contracts User Guide* do not apply to Oracle Lease Management:

- Contract number modifier, such as when you renew contracts. Two types of renewal contracts are **fixed-term renewals** and **automated renewals**. For fixed-term contract renewals, you receive a new contract number. For automated renewals, such as evergreen renewals, you keep the same contract number.

- Contract currency, contract amount, and contract party information in the User Function area. On the other hand, you can use the Site, Business Group, Operating Unit, and Category to define user functions. For more information on user functions, see the *Oracle Contracts User Guide*.

For more information on automatically numbering contracts, see the *Oracle Contracts User Guide*.

4

ERP Implementation Tasks

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Define Assets
- Define Inventory
- Set Up Order Management
- Set Up Oracle Receivables
- Set Up Payables
- Set Up Purchasing
- Set Up Trading Community Architecture

Define Assets

The Define Assets area includes:

- Define General Asset Information
- Define Asset Depreciation
- Define Books and Asset Categories
- Set Up Assets for Like-Kind Exchange
- Define Asset Book for Multi-GAAP Reporting

Define General Asset Information

The Define General Asset Information section includes:

- Define System Controls
- Define Location Flexfield

Define System Controls

Required

Specify your enterprise name, asset numbering scheme, and key flexfield structures in the System Controls window. Also specify the oldest date placed in service of your assets.

For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Setup > Asset System > System Controls

Define Location Flexfield

Required

The location flexfield lets you specify and track the physical location of your assets. You must assign the state segment qualifier to one segment of your location flexfield. The state segment facilitates property tax reporting. All other segments are optional. You can use the same setup windows to create your location flexfield as you do for your other key flexfields.

For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Key > Segments

Define Asset Depreciation

An asset can belong to any number of tax depreciation books, but it must belong to only one corporate depreciation book. This defines the depreciation rules for that asset. Depreciation methods determine the way in which Oracle Assets amortizes the asset over the time it is in use. You can specify default depreciation rules for a category and a book.

You must set up these steps in Oracle Assets in order for Oracle Lease Management to function correctly:

• Define Calendars

• Define Fiscal Years

• Define Depreciation Methods

• Define Prorate and Retirement Conventions

Define Calendars

Required

Use the Calendars window to set up as many depreciation and prorate calendars as you need. Calendars break down your fiscal year into accounting periods. Define your calendars with as many periods as you need. Define a prorate calendar and a depreciation calendar for each depreciation book. Depreciation books can share a calendar, and you can use the same calendar for your depreciation calendar and prorate calendar if appropriate.

For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Define Fiscal Years

Required

Use the Fiscal Years window to define the beginning and end of each fiscal year since the start of your company. Your fiscal year groups your accounting periods. You must define the start and end date of each fiscal year beginning with the oldest date placed in service. For example, if you are using a 4–4–5 calendar, your start and end dates change every year. When you run the depreciation program for the last period in your fiscal year, Oracle Assets automatically generates the dates for your next fiscal year.

For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Define Depreciation Methods

Required

Depreciation methods specify how to amortize the asset cost. Oracle Assets come with many standard depreciation methods, including, life-based depreciation, flat-rate depreciation, bonus-depreciation, units of production depreciation, and formula-based depreciation, for example. You can define additional methods in the Methods window if necessary.

> **Note:** If you are modeling lease pricing outside of Oracle Lease Management, set up your depreciation methods to match your modeling options.

For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Setup > Depreciations > Methods

Define Prorate and Retirement Conventions

Required

Use the Prorate Conventions window to set up your prorate and retirement conventions. Prorate and retirement conventions determine how much depreciation expense to take in the first and last year of life, based on when you place the asset in service. Oracle Assets lets you set up as many prorate and retirement conventions as you need.

For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Setup > Asset System > Prorate Conventions

Define Books and Asset Categories

The Define Books and Asset Categories section includes:

• Define Book Controls

- Define Asset Category Flexfield

- Define Asset Categories

Define Book Controls

Required

Use the Book Controls window to set up your depreciation books. While you can set up an unlimited number of independent depreciation books, only one corporate pool can be linked to a set of books. Each book has its own set of accounting rules and accounts so you can organize and implement your fixed assets accounting policies. When you define a tax book, you must specify an associated corporate book. You can mass copy assets and transactions from the source book into your tax book. Specify the current open period, and Initial Mass Copy copies each asset into the tax book from the corporate book as of the end of that fiscal year as defined in the corporate book.

For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Setup > Asset System > Book Controls

Define Asset Category Flexfield

Required

The asset category flexfield lets you define asset categories and subcategories. For example, you can create an asset category for your computer equipment. You can then create subcategories for personal computers, terminals, printers, and software. You must assign the major category segment qualifier to one segment of your category flexfield. All other segments are optional. You use the same setup windows to create your asset category flexfield as you do for your other key flexfields.

This step is required for matching inventory item codes, which assign asset categories automatically during authoring. It is also important for assigning depreciation methods.

For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Setup > Asset System > Flexfields > Key > Segments

Define Asset Categories

Required

Asset categories let you define information that is common to all assets in a category, such as depreciation method and prorate convention. Oracle Assets uses this information to provide default values to help expedite asset entry.

You must update the asset category description for the asset category that appears on the Off-Lease Asset Hold Periods setup page.

For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define asset category flexfield.

Define depreciation methods.

Define prorate/retirement conventions.

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Setup > Asset System > Asset Categories

Set Up Assets for Like-Kind Exchange

Oracle Lease Management supports the use of like-kind exchanges in lease contracts. Like-Kind Exchanges occur when you transfer the tax properties from an off-lease asset to a new on-lease asset and defer any tax payable on the disposal of the original off-lease asset. Both the off-lease and the on-lease asset must use the same asset category.

To set up assets for like-kind exchanges, you:

1. Define an asset book for like-kind exchange as a tax book associated with the primary corporate book for the lease contract. For more information on defining books and asset categories, see Define Books and Asset Categories, page 4-5.

2. Define the asset categories and depreciation methods in the manner defined for the federal tax asset book. For more information on defining books and asset categories, see Define Books and Asset Categories, page 4-5. For more information on defining asset depreciation, see Define Asset Depreciation.

3. Define the Like-Kind Exchange Hold Days on the Accounting Options page.

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Setup > Asset System

Define Asset Book for Multi-GAAP Reporting

Required for multi-GAAP reporting

Equipment lessors who operate in various countries may be required, for the same lease or loan transaction, to meet multiple accounting and tax regulations set by the different government and industry organizations. To do this, they must use multi-GAAP reporting.

The basic principle of multi-GAAP is that you create accounting entries for a single lease or loan transaction in one set of books to meet local GAAP rules and create different accounting entries in another set of books to meet the reporting GAAP rules.

To calculate the asset depreciation for the country where you use the reporting GAAP rules, you must set up a tax asset book in Oracle Assets, to be associated with the corporate asset book set up for that country.

For more information on defining books and asset categories, see Define Books and Asset Categories, page 4-5

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Asset Manager

Module

Oracle Assets

Navigation

Setup > Asset System >

Guidelines

Once you have created the reporting tax asset book for multi-GAAP reporting, then subsequently, when you are processing a contract with multi-GAAP requirements, you must set the value of the profile option OKL: Reporting Product Asset Book to the reporting tax asset book.

The profile option OKL: Reporting Product Asset Book is used by all the asset-related transactions on a multi-GAAP contract, to keep the reporting asset book synchronized with the corporate asset book.

Define Inventory

Oracle Inventory provides these features and facilities for Oracle Lease Management:

• Consistent asset descriptions and bill-of-materials (BOM) components.

• Service products.

• Links assets on contracts to inventory for portfolio analysis and asset tracking.

• Links to insurance products for cataloging.

• Controls off lease assets.

• Integration with iStore.

Oracle Inventory has these implementation tasks for Oracle Lease Management:

• Define Item Flexfield

- Define Item Categories Flexfield

- Define Item Catalog Groups

- Define Inventory Organizations

- Change Organizations

- Define Unit of Measure Classes

- Define Subinventories

- Define Categories

- Define Category Set

- Define Default Category Set

- Define Statuses

- Define Item Type for Insurance Products

- Define Items

- Define Remarketing Items with Web Attributes

Define Item Flexfield

Required

You use the Item Flexfield (also called the System Items Flexfield) for recording and reporting your actual item description. You must design and configure your Item Flexfield before you can start defining items.

All Oracle Applications products that reference items share the Item Flexfield and support multiple-segment implementations. Therefore, if you have already configured this flexfield while setting up another product, you do not need to perform this step. For more information on planning and organizing item flexfields, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide* and the *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Setup > Flexfields > Key > Segments

Define Item Categories Flexfield

Required

You must design and configure your Item Categories Flexfield before you can start defining items since all items must be assigned to categories.

You can define multiple structures for your Item Categories Flexfield, each structure corresponding to a different category grouping scheme. You can then associate these structures with the categories and category sets you define.

The item category assists you in controlling processes for related groups of items, in restricting the use of certain groups of items by functions in your organization and in analyzing your asset portfolios. The structure of the field should logically group items together for these purposes. For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Setup > Flexfields > Key > Segments

Define Item Catalog Groups

Required

If you make entries for your items in a standard industry catalog or if you want to group your items according to certain descriptive elements, you need to define item catalog groups. An item catalog group consists of descriptive elements to which you assign certain sets of values. When you assign an item to an item catalog group, you can choose descriptive elements from the group and define values for each descriptive element.

During the remarketing process of Oracle Lease Management, you need to associate a catalog for the remarketer assignment. By defining an item catalog, you assure that each item is only associated with one catalog.

For more information, see the Defining Item Catalog Groups section of the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define item catalog group flexfield.

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Setup > Items > Catalog Groups

Define Inventory Organizations

Required

Organizations describe distinct entities in your company that use the inventory function and can include separate manufacturing facilities, warehouses, distribution centers, and branch offices.

You need to define one or more organizations in Oracle Inventory. Subsequently you assign items and categories to a particular organization to which users are also assigned. A user can work within only one organization at a time.

Since Oracle Inventory lets you implement multiple sets of books with multiple organizations, you need to specify the set of books to which your organization is tied.

> **Note:** It is mandatory that you set up one organization for authoring and another for remarketing.

For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Setup > Organizations > Organizations

Change Organizations

Required

Until you define an organization and set parameters, Oracle Inventory operates with no specific organization chosen.

In all post-setup working, you need to identify a specific organization as your current organization, to set up items and item categories. For both authoring and remarketing organizations, change to one of the organizations you created, using the Change Organization window.

> **Note:** An Oracle Lease Management user profile option is OKL: Contract Items Inventory Organization.
>
> When you author a contract, this profile option must point to the same organization as the one you change to in Oracle Inventory.
>
> When you work with remarketing organizations, this profile option does not need to point to the same organization as the one you change to in Oracle Inventory.

For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define Inventory Organizations, page 4-12

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Change Organization

Define Unit of Measure Classes

Required

A unit of measure is a logical unit description for grouping items - for example, box, each, or pair.

You must define unit of measure (UOM) classes and the base unit of measure for each class. UOM classes represent groups of units of measure with similar characteristics, such as Volume or Length. Each unit of measure you define must belong to a unit of measure class.

For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

Change Organizations, page 4-13

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Setup > Units of Measure > Classes

Define Subinventories

Required

A subinventory is a physical or logical grouping of your inventory, such as raw material, finished goods, defective material, or freezer compartment. It provides a further subdivision of an inventory, which is useful in narrowing searches. For example, Oracle Lease Management uses subinventories for the warehouse that you would use in remarketing assets.

You must move each item into, out of, or within a subinventory whenever you perform an inventory transaction.

You must define at least one subinventory for each organization.

For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

Change Organizations, page 4-13

Responsibility

> Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

> Oracle Inventory

Navigation

> Setup > Organizations > Subinventories

Define Categories

> Required

> You can use categories and category sets to group items for various reports and programs. A category is a logical classification of items that have similar characteristics. A category set is a distinct grouping scheme and consists of categories.

> Categories are actual functional names for groups of items, and are defined using a flexfield-type format, for example, transportation.aircraft.OEM.engines.

> Categories can be used to designate items or products (assets) to portfolios or industries to assist with analysis and residual planning.

> For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

> Define Item Categories Flexfield

> Change Organizations

Responsibility

> Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

> Oracle Inventory

Navigation

> Setup > Items > Categories

Define Category Set

> Required

> Category sets are used to group categories together. For example, a category set could

group inventory categories by function usage, such as Warehousing, Contracts, and Order Management. Alternatively, a category set could be used to define groups of items that can be leased versus those that are manufactured or sold wholesale.

For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

Change Organizations

Define Categories

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Setup > Items > Categories > Category Sets

Define Default Category Set

Required

When you install Oracle Inventory, you must assign a default category set to each of these functional areas: Inventory, Purchasing, Order Management, Costing, Engineering, Planning, and Contracts.

Oracle Inventory automatically assigns items defined for use by a particular functional area to the category set associated with the functional area. You can assign items to more than one functional area by assigning the item to multiple categories and category sets.

> **Note:** Inventory items to be leased are included in the Contracts functional area; inventory items to be remarketed are in the Inventory and Order Management functional areas.

When referencing a category set, processes conducted by the functional area, such as leasing within Contracts, use the default category set value for that functional area.

For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

Change Organizations

Define Category Set

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Setup > Items > Categories > Default Category Sets

Define Statuses

Required

You must define statuses that you can assign to items, denoting the level of activity you allow for them. A status is a set of Yes/No values for the status attributes. Status attributes are flags that exist for each functional area for which you enable an item: stockable, transactable, purchasable, build in WIP, customer orderable, internal orderable, BOM allowed, and invoice enabled. When you define an item, you can use statuses to control the values of or provide default values for the status attributes, or to drive behavior during processes.

Statuses can be assigned to items used for a particular purpose, such as leasing, remarketing, or manufacturing. For example, items used solely for leasing could be configured with a status where the Purchasable flag was set to No.

For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

Change Organizations

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Setup > Items > Status Codes

Guidelines

Create a status of Lease. All the attributes associated with it must be set to No. To change this, deselect the box to the left of the attribute.

Define Item Type for Insurance Products

Required

You must register insurance products that are sold by the lessor as inventory items in Oracle Inventory, so that they can make use of other Oracle Applications facilities, such as calculation of tax.

In Oracle Inventory, you must first create an item type used to categorize insurance products. You only have to do this once. When you create your insurance inventory item, you must associate it with this item type.

For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Setup > Items > Item Types

Guidelines

This item type, which you created for your insurance items, must be associated with a profile option called **OKL: Insurance Item Type**.

See Define Insurance.

Define Items

You must define or update items and the attributes associated with them (such as description, lead time, unit of measure, lot control, or statuses). These items can then be used as the assets to be leased or loaned in Oracle Lease Management.

To automatically assign depreciation methods in Oracle Assets, the item must be related to an asset category. This is done on the Purchasing tab in the Item Definition page.

When you are authoring a contract, each leased item points to an item master. For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define Item Flexfield

Define Item Categories Flexfield

Define Inventory Organizations

Change Organizations

Define Unit of Measure Classes

Define Subinventories

Define Categories

Define Category Set

Define Default Category Set

Define Statuses

Define Item Type for Insurance Products

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Items > Master Items

Guidelines

To enable Oracle Lease Management's full functionality, set up these items, if applicable:

- Lease items

- Service items

- Insurance items

- Usage-based billing items

- Usage items

Item for Lease

For inventory items to be leased, the basis for Serial Number Generation should be the same in the Inventory Master Organization and the Leasing Organization.

Responsibility

(Forms) -> Inventory

Navigation

Inventory > Item > Organization Items > *<find your leasing item in the Find window>* > Organization Item (form) > Inventory Tab > Field > Serial

The Generation field should have same value for leasing inventory Organization and Master Inventory Organization.

Item for Service

Responsibility

(Forms) > Inventory

Navigation

Inventory > Items > Master Items >

1. Select an item.

2. Select the Service tab.

3. Select the Serviceable Product check box.

Item for Insurance

When the Master Item window appears, enter the item code for your insurance product in the Item field, and optionally a Description.

On the Main tab, perform:

*   For the Primary Unit of Measure, select Each.

*   For the User Item Type, select the insurance item type that you created in Define Item Type for Insurance Products, page 4-18.

On the Purchasing tab, perform:

*   For the Taxable field, choose either **Yes** or **No**.

*   If you chose **Yes** for the Taxable field, select a tax code.

On the General Planning tab, perform:

*   For the Inventory Planning Method, select **Not Planned**.

*   For the Make or Buy field, select **Buy**.

Usage Based Billing Items for Leases

Lease-related Usage Based Billing (UBB) items must be available in the Oracle Install Base module so you can associate lease-related UBB items with pricing counter groups. To make Usage Based Billing (UBB) items available in the Oracle Install Base module, you must select the Serviceable Product box on the Service tab.

Usage Items

In the Oracle Pricing module, you associate usage items with price lists. In the Install Base module, you associate usage items with counter groups.

For Usage Items:

- Select the Customer Ordered box on the Order Management tab.

- Select the Invoice Enabled box on the Invoicing tab.

- Select the Usage Item box on the Service tab.

Associating Asset Categories with Items

Note: To automatically populate Oracle Assets when booking a contract, you must associate all items with asset categories, previously set up in Oracle Assets. For each item, enter the Asset Category field on the Purchasing tab.

Define Remarketing Items with Web Attributes

Required

To enable an item to be published and orderable on the Web, you need to update some of the item attributes. You can do this as you create or update the item.

For more information, see the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define Items

Responsibility

Oracle Inventory Administrator

Module

Oracle Inventory

Navigation

Items > Master Items

Define Inventory for Sales Tax

To define inventory for sales tax, complete the following tasks:

- Define Item Categories Flexfield for Sales Tax

- Define Categories for Sales Tax

- Define Category Set for Sales Tax

Define Item Categories Flexfield for Sales Tax

To enable Lease Management sales tax, define a new structure for the item categories flexfield. For more information on defining item categories flexfields, see Define Item Categories Flexfield.

Complete the following steps in Oracle Inventory:

- Navigate to Setup > Flexfields > Key > Segments

- Define a new structure with the following details:

  Code:AR_TAX_PRODUCT_FISCAL_CLASS

  Title: Product Fiscal Class - Leasing

  Description: Product Classification for Leasing

- Click Segment to create new segment.

- Enter the following segment values:

  Number: 1

  Name: Product Fiscal Classification

  Window Prompt: Product Fiscal Classification

  Column: SEGMENT1

- Click Open.

- Enter the following values:

  Number: 30

  Value Set: AR_TAX_PRODUCT_FISCAL_CLASS

- Click Value Set.

- Enter the following values:

  List Type: List of Values

  Format Type: Char

  Validation Type: Table

- Save the Flexfield.

- Freeze the Flexfield definition.

• Compile the Flexfield.

Define Categories for Sales Tax

To enable Lease Management sales tax, define category codes for lookup code and lookup type AR_TAX_PRODUCT_FISCAL_CLASS. For more information on defining categories, see Define Categories.

Complete the following steps in Oracle Inventory:

• Navigate to Setup > Item > Categories > Category Codes

• Enter the following category code details:

    Structure Name: Product Fiscal Class - Leasing

    Category: Select from lookup code defined for lookup type AR_TAX_PRODUCT_FISCAL_CLASS.

    Description: Enter description.

    Enabled: Yes

Define Category Set for Sales Tax

To enable Lease Management sales tax, define the category set for the key flexfield structure defined above. Assign items to the category codes previously created. For more information on defining category sets, see Define Category Set..

Complete the following steps in Oracle Inventory:

• Navigate to Setup > Item > Categories > Category Sets

• Define category set by entering the following details:

    Name: Product Fiscal Class - Leasing

    Description: Product Classification for Leasing

    Flex Structure: Product Fiscal Class - Leasing

    Controlled At: Master level

    Default Category: Select Any

    Enforce List of Valid Categories: Yes

    Select the Category Codes from those defined with a flex structure of Product Fiscal Class - Leasing

• Click Assign.

• Assign Items to Category Codes.

> **Note:** The Receivables tax engine derives category codes associated with an item of the transaction for which the tax call is made. The category codes determine the applicability of tax codes in Tax Group evaluation.

Set Up Order Management

Required

Oracle Order Management setup covers how you create sales orders and returns, and copy existing sales orders from orders in Oracle iStore.

Oracle Order Management shares business and setup information with other Oracle Applications products. Therefore, you must refer to other implementation and user guides when you set up and use Oracle Order Management.

Order Management setup involves several phases, including setting up other integrated applications, that include Oracle General Ledger, Oracle Receivables, and Oracle Inventory. Oracle Lease Management uses Order Management during the remarketing of an asset. When an asset is sold through Oracle iStore, a sale is created in Order Management. Oracle Lease Management has modified some Order Management workflows so that Lease Management automatically updates transactions with asset sales and appropriately retires assets.

You must also set up some Oracle Lease Management specific transaction types for Order Header and Order Line. The process is detailed in the steps below.

For more information on implementing Oracle Order Management, see the *Oracle Order Management Suite Implementation Manual.*

Set Up Transaction Types

To sell inventory items through Oracle iStore, you must enable specific transaction types that Oracle Lease Management uses.

Prerequisite

An Oracle Lease Management custom workflow must be set up.

Responsibility

Order Management Super Menu

Module

Oracle Applications (Log in as SYSADMIN User)

Navigation

Setup > Transaction Types > Define

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. When you select the Define option, the Transaction Types window opens. In the Line Transaction Type field, run a query for the a transaction type of "Standard (Line Invoicing)".

2. Make sure the transaction type code is "LINE" and the Order Category is "Order."

3. Click the Shipping tab and choose the warehouse name from the list of values.

4. Save your work.

   Return to the main Transaction Types window and create an Order Header Transaction type with the following values:

5. In the Transaction Type field enter "OKL_Standard."

6. In the Descriptions field, enter "OKL Standard Order Type."

7. In the Transaction Type Code field, choose Order from the list of values.

8. In the Order Category field, choose Mixed from the list of values.

9. In the Order Workflow field, choose the customized Order Management Order Header Workflow process called "OKL Order Flow - Generic" from the list of values.

10. On the Main tab, in the Agreement Type field, choose Standard Terms and Conditions from the list of values.

11. In the Default Order Line Type field, choose "Standard (Line Invoicing)" from the list of values.

12. In the Price List field, choose Corporate from the list of values.

13. In the Ordering field, choose Booking from the list of values.

14. In the Shipping field, choose Picking from the list of values.

15. Click the Shipping tab and in the Warehouse field, choose the name of the warehouse from the list of values.

16. Click the Assign Line Flows button.

This opens the Line Workflow Assignments window. Enter the following:

17. In the Order Type field choose "OKL_Standard" just as you did in the Transaction Type field.

18. In the Line Type field, choose "Standard (Line Invoicing)."

19. In the Item Type field, choose "Standard Item."

20. In the Process Name field, choose "Line Flow - Generic."

21. Enter a Start Date.

22. Save your work.

Set Up Oracle Receivables

Oracle Receivables is a required module for Oracle Lease Management. You must implement Oracle Receivables as required by the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*. There are also multiple steps that require configurations specific to Lease Management

Oracle Receivables has the following implementation tasks that affect Oracle Lease Management:

- Define Line Transaction Flexfield Structure

- Define Payment Terms

- Open Accounting Periods

- Define AutoAccounting

- Define Transaction Types

- Set Up Grouping Rules for Invoices

- Define Transaction Sources

- Define Remittance Banks

- Define Receipt Classes

- Define Payment Methods

- Define Aging Buckets

- Define System Options

- Define Tax Options

- Billing Adjustments for Lease Management

- Billing Approval Limits for Adjustments for Lease Management

- Define Receivables Lookups

Define Line Transaction Flexfield Structure for AutoInvoice

Required

To use AutoInvoice to import Oracle Lease Management invoices and create transactions in Oracle Receivables, you must define the **line transaction flexfield** and all the segments within it.

Transaction flexfields are descriptive flexfields that AutoInvoice uses to uniquely identify transaction lines. Oracle Receivables lets you determine how to build your transaction flexfield structure and what information to capture.

Step 1:

Enter OKL_CONTRACTS

Enter OKL_MANUAL

Enter OKL_INVESTOR

Step 2:

To define the line-level Transaction Flexfield, query "Line transaction Flexfield" in the title field of the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window and enter the text and segments associated with this transaction flexfield.

The following table shows the values for the line transaction flexfields for most of Lease Management.

Line Transaction Flexfield Values for Lease Management

Column Name	Segment Name	Value Set	Req
INTERFACE_LINE_ ATTRIBUTE10	CONSOLIDATED_ST REAMS_ID1	(None)	Y
INTERFACE_LINE_ ATTRIBUTE11	CONSOLIDATED_ST REAMS_ID2	(None)	Y

The following table shows the values for the line transaction flexfields for advance receipts functionality.

Line Transaction Flexfields for Advance Receipts (Advance Monies) Functionality

Column Name	Segment Name	Value Set	Req
INTERFACE_LINE_ ATTRIBUTE10	CONSOLIDATED_ST REAMS_ID1	(None)	Y
INTERFACE_LINE_ ATTRIBUTE11	CONSOLIDATED_ST REAMS_ID2	(None)	Y

The following table shows the values for the line transaction flexfields for investor agreements functionality.

Line Transaction Flexfields for Investor Agreements Functionality

Column Name	Segment Name	Value Set	Req
INTERFACE_LINE_ ATTRIBUTE2	CONSOLIDATED_ST REAMS_ID3	(None)	Y
INTERFACE_LINE_ ATTRIBUTE3	CONSOLIDATED_ST REAMS_ID4	(None)	Y

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Navigation

Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Descriptive > Segments

Steps

Perform the following steps

1. Select Oracle Receivables as the application and Line Transaction Flexfield for the Title.

2. Deselect the Freeze Flexfield Definition box--otherwise you cannot create a new record.

3. In the Context Field Values area, select **OKL_CONTRACTS**.

4. Click Segments to edit the definition.

5. Enter the values listed in the appropriate table under Define Line Transaction Flexfield Structure

> **Note:** These values must be in upper case.

6. To compile the flexfield, click the Compile button.

7. Repeat steps 3-6, selecting **OKL_INVESTOR** in the Context Field Values area, and entering the values listed in the appropriate table under Define Line Transaction Flexfield Structure.

8. Select the Freeze Flexfield Definition box to freeze the definitions.

For more information about defining Transaction Flexfield indexes, see the Transaction Flexfields of the *Oracle Receivables User Guide.*

Define Payment Terms

Required

Define payment terms to determine the payment schedule and discount information for customer invoices, debit memos, and deposits. You can also define proximo payment terms to pay regular expenses such as telephone bills and credit card bills that occur on the same day each month, and create split payment terms for invoice installments that have different due dates.

The two seeded options are 30 Net, which indicates that a payment is due within 30 days, and **Immediate**. By default, Oracle Receivables uses 30 NET. However, Oracle Lease Management uses the **Immediate** option, ONLY.

For more information, see the Payment Terms section of the *Oracle Receivables User Guide.*

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Transactions > Payment Terms

Open Accounting Periods

Required

Open or close periods in your accounting calendar to control the recording of accounting information for these periods. Receivables uses the status of these accounting periods to control transaction entry and journal entry creation to your general ledger. You cannot enter an activity in a closed accounting period. Receivables provides these period statuses: Not Opened, Future, Open, Close Pending, and Closed.

For more information, see the Opening and Closing Accounting Periods section of the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Financials > Calendars > Period Types

Define AutoAccounting

Required

Define AutoAccounting to specify the general ledger accounts for transactions that you enter manually or import using AutoInvoice. AutoAccounting uses this information to create the default revenue, receivable, freight, tax, unearned revenue, unbilled receivable, finance charges, bills receivable accounts, and AutoInvoice clearing (suspense) accounts.

Oracle Lease Management requires that AutoAccounting be enabled because not all billing items have accounting associated with them. Leasing contracts always have the accounting pre-defined, but for items such as vendor billing or billing at the customer level, the accounting needs to be generated in Receivables.

Lease Management does not send an accounting flexfield for any tax lines created with an invoice. You must set up AutoAccounting for tax lines to ensure successful import of invoices using AutoInvoice and accounting of tax amounts.

For more information, see the AutoAccounting section in the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Transactions > AutoAccounting

Define Transaction Types

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Transactions > Transaction Types

Define Transaction Type Invoice

> **Caution:** For the transaction types of Invoice-OKL, Credit Memo-OKL, or Investor-OKL, an Overapplication Allowed check box appears. This check box is to allow overapplication of funds to invoices. Lease Management does not support overapplication of funds to invoices., and this check box should not be selected.

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Enter a transaction name: **Invoice-OKL**

    This OKL transaction type is case sensitive and you must enter it as **Invoice-OKL**.

2. Optionally enter a description.

3. Enter Invoice as transaction class for this transaction type.

4. Select the Open Receivable box.

This updates your customer balances each time you create a complete debit memo, credit memo, charge back, or on–account credit with this transaction type. Receivables also includes these transactions in the standard aging and collection processes.

5. Select the Post to GL box to be able to post transactions with this type to your general ledger.

6. Choose a default Printing Option for transactions with this transaction type.

   Choose Print or Do Not Print. You can override this value when entering transactions.

7. Choose a Transaction Status of Open, Closed, Pending, or Void.

   Use these statuses to implement your own invoice approval system.

8. Select the Allow Freight box to allow freight to be entered for transactions with this transaction type.

9. Deselect the Tax Calculation checkbox if your transaction type is Invoice-OKL, Credit Memo-OKL, or Investor-OKL.

10. Choose a Creation Sign.

    The default is Positive Sign for transaction types with a class of either Guarantee or Deposit. If you are using the Cash Basis accounting method, your transaction's creation sign must be either Positive or Negative. You cannot update this field after you enter transactions with this type.

11. If this transaction type's class is not Deposit or Guarantee and you want to restrict the direction in which items with this transaction type can be updated by applications entered against them, select the Natural Application Only box.

    If you select this box, Receivables sets Allow Overapplication to No. You cannot update this option after you save this transaction type.

12. Enter an Application Rule Set for this transaction type or select one from the list of values (optional).

    An Application Rule Set determines the default payment steps when you use the Applications window or AutoLockbox to apply receipts to transactions using this type. If you do not enter a rule set, Receivables uses the rule set in the System Options window as the default.

13. If this transaction type's class is not Deposit or Guarantee, and you did not select the Natural Application Only box, choose whether to Allow Overapplication against items with this transaction type by selecting or deselecting this box.

    If you select this box, Receivables sets Natural Application to No and you cannot

update it after you save this transaction type. If you use the Cash Basis accounting method, the default value is No and you cannot change it.

14. If this transaction type's class is either Deposit or Guarantee, enter the Invoice Type to use for invoices entered against commitments or deposits with this transaction type.

    When you enter an invoice against either a deposit or a guarantee with this transaction type, the value you enter here is the default invoice transaction type.

15. If this transaction type's class is Deposit, Guarantee, Debit Memo, or Invoice, enter the Credit Memo Type to use when crediting items with this transaction type (optional).

    When you enter a credit memo against an invoice with this transaction type, the value you enter here is the default credit memo transaction type.

16. Enter the range of dates that this transaction type is active.

    The default Start Date is today's date, but you can change it. If you do not enter an End Date, this transaction type is active indefinitely.

17. Save your work.

Define Transaction Type Credit Memo

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. While still in the Transaction Types page, create a new transaction type called Credit Memo-OKL (Case sensitive).

2. From the Navigator, access the Receivables Administrator responsibility > Setup > Transactions > Transaction type.

3. Enter Credit Memo-OKL for the transaction name.

   This is case-sensitive and must be entered exactly as specified. Optionally, enter a transaction description.

4. Enter Credit Memo as transaction class for this transaction type.

5. Choose a default Printing Option for transactions with this transaction type, either Print or Do Not Print.

   You can override this value when entering transactions.

6. For Transaction Status, enter Open.

7. For Creation sign, enter Any Sign.

8. Select these boxes:

- Natural Application Only

- Open Receivable

- Post to GL

9. Save your work.

Define Transaction Type Investor

Follow the same procedure as described in Define Transaction Type Credit Memo. In Step 3, enter **Investor-OKL** (case sensitive). In Step 4, enter **Investor**.

For more information, see the Transaction Types section in the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

Set Up Grouping Rules for Invoices

Required

The setup of grouping rules for Oracle Lease Management invoices is a two-stage process:

- Specify Grouping Rules

- Attach Grouping Rules to Batch Source

For setting up grouping rules for investors, see:

- Set up Grouping Rules for Investor

Specify Grouping Rules

Required

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Receivables Manager

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Transactions > AutoInvoice > Grouping Rules

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the AutoInvoice Grouping Rules window, specify or complete these fields:

    *   **Name**: OKL_CONTRACTS_INVOICE.

    *   **Description**: OKL Invoice Grouping Rule.

    *   **Effective: Start Date**: The beginning date for the grouping rule to apply.

    *   **Effective: End Date**: The ending date for the grouping rule to apply.

    *   **Transaction Class:** Invoice.

    *   **Group By: Optional Grouping Characteristics**: (first line):
        L.INTERFACE_LINE_ATTRIBUTE10.

    *   **Group By: Optional Grouping Characteristics**: (second line):
        L.INTERFACE_LINE_ATTRIBUTE11.

2. Choose File > Save.

After you specify grouping rules, attach the grouping rules to a batch source.

Attach Grouping Rules to Batch Source

Required

Prerequisites

Create the grouping rule. For more information, see Specify Grouping Rules.

Responsibility

Receivables Manager

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Transactions > Sources

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Name field, choose OKL_CONTRACTS.

   OKL_CONTRACTS is your transaction source name.

2. In the Type field, choose Imported.

3. Click the AutoInvoice Options tab.

4. Complete the following fields:

   - **Invalid Tax Rate**: Correct.

   - **Invoice Line**: Reject Invoice.

   - **GL Date in a Closed Period**: Reject.

   - **Group Rule**: OKL_CONTRACTS_INVOICE.

     OKL_CONTRACTS_INVOICE is the name that you specified when you created Grouping Rule.

5. Select only the Allow Sales Credit box.

6. Choose File > Save.

Set up Grouping Rules for Investor

To set up grouping rules for investors, follow the same procedures as described in Specify Grouping Rule and Attach Grouping Rules to Batch Source. Use **OKL_INVESTOR_GRP_RL** , and use **L.INTERFACE_LINE_ATTRIBUTE2** and **L.INTERFACE_LINE_ATTRIBUTE3** .

Define Transaction Sources

Required

Batch sources control the standard transaction type assigned to a transaction and determine whether Oracle Receivables automatically numbers your transactions and transaction batches. Active transaction batch sources appear as list of values choices in the Transactions, Transactions Summary, and Credit Transactions windows.

You can define two types of transaction batch sources:

- **Manual**: Use manual batch sources with transactions that you enter manually in the Transaction and Transactions Summary windows.

- **Imported**: Use imported batch sources to import transactions into Receivables using AutoInvoice.

You can make a batch source inactive by deselecting the Active box and saving your work. Receivables does not display inactive transaction batch sources as list of values choices or let you assign them to your transactions.

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Transactions > Sources

Steps

To define transaction sources, perform:

1. Click the Batch Source tab.

2. Enter **OKL_CONTRACTS** as the name.

3. Select Imported as the type.

4. Enter a Description.

5. Enter the range of Effective Dates for this source.

   The Start date is the current date, but you can change it. If you do not enter an end date, this transaction batch source is active indefinitely.

6. If this is a Manual source, and you want to automatically number new batches you create using this source, select the Automatic Batch Numbering box and enter a Last Number.

   For example, to start numbering your batches with 1000, enter 999 in the Last Number field. If you are defining an Imported transaction batch source, Receivables automatically numbers the batch with the batch source name – request ID.

7. Select the Automatic Transaction Numbering box and enter a Last Number to automatically number new transactions you create using this source.

   You can use automatic transaction numbering with both Imported and Manual sources.

8. Select the Copy Document Number to Transaction Number box (optional) to use the same value for both the document number and the transaction number for transactions assigned to this source.

9. For the Reference Field Default Value select **interface_header_attribute6**. This will display contract numbers in the Reference field in the Transaction window.

10. Enter Invoice-OKL as the Standard Transaction Type for this batch source.

    When you choose a batch source during transaction entry, this is the default transaction type. You can define new transaction types in the Transaction Types window.

    Click the AutoInvoice Options tab.

11. Specify how you want AutoInvoice to handle imported transactions that have Invalid Tax Rates.

    An invalid tax rate is one in which the imported transaction's tax rate does not match its tax code.

    Enter Correct if you want AutoInvoice to automatically update the tax rate that you supplied to the one that you defined previously for the tax code.

    Enter Reject if you want AutoInvoice to reject the transaction.

12. Specify how you want AutoInvoice to handle imported transactions with Invalid Lines by entering either Reject Invoice or Create Invoice.

13. Specify how you want AutoInvoice to handle imported transactions that have lines in the Interface Lines table that are in a closed period.

    In the GL Date in a Closed Period field, enter "Adjust" to have AutoInvoice automatically adjust the GL dates to the first GL date of the next open or future enterable period. The name of this attribute is GL Date in a Closed Period.

    Enter "Reject" to reject these transactions.

14. If you want AutoInvoice to require that the revenue amount for each transaction line is equal to the selling price times the quantity specified for that line, select the Create Clearing box.

    Use this option to distribute revenue on an transaction in an amount that is not equal to the transaction line amount. If you select this box, AutoInvoice puts any difference between the revenue amount and the selling price times the quantity for a transaction into the AutoInvoice Clearing account that you have defined. Otherwise, AutoInvoice requires that the revenue amount be equal to the selling price times the quantity for all of the transactions it is processing.

15. Define your clearing account in the Automatic Accounting window.

16. Indicate whether sales credits can be entered for transactions using this source by selecting or deselecting the Allow Sales Credit box.

    This option and the Require Salesreps option in the System Options window determine whether sales credits are optional or required.

17. Click the Customer Information tab.

18. Select Id for each option to indicate that AutoInvoice validates your customer information for this batch source using an identifier.

19. Choose **Value** if you use this batch source to import data from a non–Oracle system.

20. Click the Accounting Information tab.

21. Select Id to indicate how AutoInvoice validates your Invoice and Accounting Rule data for this batch source.

22. Select Id to indicate whether you want AutoInvoice to validate the identifier for this batch source.

23. Select the Derive Date box to derive the default rule start date and default GL date from the ship date, rule start date, order date and the default date that you supply when you submit AutoInvoice.

    If Oracle Inventory is installed, this must be selected.

24. Select Id to indicate that AutoInvoice validates your Payment Terms for this batch source using identifiers.

25. Select Percent to indicate that AutoInvoice validates your Revenue Account Allocation data for this batch source.

26. Click the Other Information tab.

27. Select Id to validate other data except for Agreement, Sales Territory, and Related Document.

28. Click the Sales Credit Validation tab.

29. Select Id for first two options to validate information using identifiers for this batch source.

30. Select Percent to validate sales credits based on percent.

31. Save your work.

For more information, see the Transaction Batch Sources section in the *Oracle Receivables*

User Guide.

Define Transaction Sources for Investor Agreements

Follow the same procedure described in Define Transaction Sources. At Step 2 enter **OKL_INVESTOR**. At Step 10 enter **Investor-OKL**.

Define Remittance Banks

Required

Define all of the banks and bank accounts you use to remit your payments. You can define as many banks and bank accounts as you need.

If you already defined your remittance banks when setting up Oracle Public Sector Payables, then proceed to the next step.

For more information, see the Defining Banks section in the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*
.

Prerequisites

You must install Oracle Payables.

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Receipts > Banks

Define Receipt Classes

Required

Define receipt classes to specify whether receipts are created manually or automatically. For manual receipts, you can specify whether to automatically remit it to the bank and/or clear your accounts. For automatic receipts, you can specify a remittance and clearance method, and whether receipts using this class require confirmation.

For more information, see the Receipt Classes section in the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*
.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Receipts > Receipt Classes

Define Payment Methods

Required

Define the payment methods to account for your receipt entries and applications and to determine a customer's remittance bank information. When defining payment methods, you must enter a receipt class, remittance bank information, and the accounts associated with your payment receivables type. You can also specify accounts for confirmation, remittance, factoring, bank charges, and short–term debt.

For more information, see the Payment Methods section in the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

Prerequisites

You must define receipt classes and your banks.

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Receipts > Receipt Classes

Define Aging Buckets

Required (Prerequisite for general loss provision functionality. See Define Loss Provision Rules, page 6-89.

Define aging buckets to review and report on open receivables based on the number of days each item is past due. For example, the 4–Bucket Aging bucket that Receivables provides consists of four periods: –999 to 0 days past due, 1 to 30 days past due, 31–61

days past due, and 61–91 days past due.

For Oracle Lease Management, you must define aging buckets that you use to create loss provisions.

For more information, see the Aging Buckets section in the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Collections > Aging Buckets

Define System Options

Required

Define your accounting, discount, tax, and invoice system options to control how Receivables works. System options determine your accounting method, set of books, accounting flexfields, whether you use header or line-level rounding, and control the default operation of the AutoInvoice and Automatic Receipt programs.

System options also control how Receivables calculates tax on your transactions. You must specify a tax method, choose a Location Flexfield Structure (example: state.county.city), indicate whether to compound tax, select the address validation to use, and define tax defaults and rounding options. As you can set up your system to calculate Sales Tax, Value Added Tax, or other taxes, as well as handle estimated, actual, and adjusted property taxes, we recommend that you carefully review appropriate implementing tax essays before defining your system options.

To remarket items that come off lease, you must set up these tax parameters. The Location Flexfield Structure lets you determine taxes for different customer locations. You must define a valid tax rate for the state, county, city, and postal code combination of each customer address.

For more information, see Defining Receivables System Options in the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define your set of books (*Oracle General Ledger User Guide*).

Define AutoCash Rule sets.

Define Grouping Rules.

Define Key Flexfield segments.

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > System > System Options

Define Tax Options

Required

Set up the remaining features of Receivables tax, which were not part of the system options setup, by defining tax-specific profile options, tax codes and rates, tax Lookups, tax exceptions and exemptions, tax authorities, and tax groups.

Oracle Lease Management requires that you calculate sales tax on quotes and billing items.

Oracle Lease Management requires you to create and set up two transaction types in Receivables Forms > Setup > Transactions > Transaction Types: Invoice-OKL and Credit Memo-OKL.

For more information, refer to the appropriate implementing tax essay in the *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*. You can also reference the *Oracle Receivables User Guide.*

Prerequisites

You must define your Oracle Receivables system options.

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > Tax (There are several forms within the Tax directory that you might need to configure when defining tax options.)

Billing Adjustments for Lease Management

Navigation

Setup > Receipts > Receivable Activities

Steps

Lease Management includes a seeded receivable activity record, Adjustment.

Create another record with identical attributes and name it OKL Adjustment. This is required before you run the concurrent program Create AR Adjustment.

Billing Approval Limits for Adjustments for Lease Management

Navigation

Setup > Transactions > Approval Limits.

Steps

Set up approval limits for the appropriate users according to their usernames in Oracle Lease Management. Make sure that the Document Type is Adjustment.

Set Up Install_At and Ship_To Addresses For Customers and Assets

Navigation

Oracle Forms

Set up Install_At sites and ensure that they have corresponding Ship_To addresses, required for billing processing and for display as possible installed locations when creating an asset. (If an address is later found to be invalid, the Bill_To address for the contract is used as the Ship_To address in Receivables.)

Steps

1. Log onto Oracle Forms with responsibility Telesales Manager.

   • In the eBusiness Center, in the Party Type list, select Organization and select the customer name.

   • Enter the address that you want to set up as the Install_At address.

   • On the Address/Phone tab, in the Address Type list, select Install_At.

2. Log onto Oracle Forms with responsibility Receivables Manager.

- In the Customers, Standard form, select the customer. On the Addresses tab, select New.

- In the Customer Addresses form, in the Site Number field, select the address entered as the Install_At address for the customer.

- On the Business Purpose tab, in the Usage field, select Ship_To and select or enter the site.

3. Repeat for each possible Install_At site for each customer.

Define Receivables Lookups

Required

Lookup names display as list of value choices throughout Oracle Applications to help speed data entry and accuracy. Receivables provides many lookups types for you. Some lookup types can be updated to suit your business needs. You cannot update a lookup type if Receivables requires those settings for its own internal use.

You can create new lookup types and define as many additional lookups as you want in the Receivables Lookups window. For Oracle Lease Management, you need to define two additional lookups, described in the Guidelines below.

You cannot change lookup name values after you save them. To remove an obsolete lookup you can: disable the code, enter an end date, or change the meaning and description to match a replacement code.

A lookup is any defined value that was not defined in a setup window. Use the Oracle Purchasing Lookups window to review and maintain sets of values, or lookups that you use in Payables.

For more information on defining your Receivables lookups, see the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Oracle Receivables Administrator

Module

Oracle Receivables

Navigation

Setup > System > QuickCodes > Receivables

Guideline

You must define the following Oracle Lease Management-specific lookups. To do so, within the **QuickCodes > Receivables** page enter a query of type **CUSTOMER_CATEGORY**. Add two blank lines and add the two new lookups with these values.

The following table shows two codes with descriptions and meanings.

Lookups for Oracle Lease Management

CODE	MEANING	DESCRIPTION
Insurer	Insurance Agent	Insurance Agent
Insurance_Agent	Insurance Agent	Insurance Agent

Set Up Sales Tax

To set up sales tax in Oracle Receivables, see complete the following tasks:

- Set Up the Tax Method

- Define Lookup Codes

- Define Location-Based Tax Codes for Leasing

- Define Location-Based Tax Rates for Leasing

- Define Tax Groups

- Set the Tax Calculation on the Transaction Type

- Define AutoAccounting for Tax Lines in Receivables

Set Up the Tax Method

In Oracle Receivables Tax page, select Sales Tax in the Tax Method field if the location-based tax codes for leasing are used for tax calculation.

Define Lookup Codes

In the Oracle Receivables Lookup page, define lookup codes for the following lookup types:

- **AR_TAX_TRX_BUSINESS_CATEGORY:** Lookup codes defined here are available

for the Transaction Business Category tax parameter on the Tax Group page.

- **AR_TAX_PRODUCT_FISCAL_CLASS**; Lookup codes defined here are available for the Product Fiscal classification tax parameter on the Tax Group page.

To define Oracle Receivables lookups, see Define Receivables Lookups, page 4-45.

Define Location-Based Tax Codes for Leasing

In Oracle Receivables Tax Codes page, select the Leasing checkbox to define location-based tax codes for leasing. Only location-based tax codes with the Leasing checkbox selected are available for defining location-based tax rates in the Tax Location and Rates page.

To complete location-based tax code setup, perform the following tasks:

- Enter Tax Code

- Select Location-Based Tax as the Tax Type

- Enter Effective Dates for the Tax Code

- Select the Leasing checkbox

- Define Accounting Flexfield for Tax for AutoAccounting

You can define multiple location-based tax codes for leasing with the same Effective Dates.

The Ad hoc checkbox is for non-location-based tax codes.

Define Location-Based Tax Rates for Leasing

In Oracle Receivables, set up location-based tax rates by completing the following tasks:

- Select a Location and enter the Tax Rate

- Enter Effective From and To Dates for the tax rate

- Enter a range of postal codes for the tax rate

- Do not select a value in the Tax Code column if the tax rate is a standard rate rather than a special tax rate for leasing

- Select Location-Based Tax Codes for leasing in the Tax Code column if the tax rate is a special rate for leasing

If no tax rate is defined for location-based tax code for leasing, the standard rate will be applied to the transaction to calculate the tax amount.

Define Tax Groups

In the Oracle Receivables Tax Group page, perform the following tasks for tax groups:

- Define Tax Groups

- In the Rates tab, select Tax Codes and compounding precedence

- In the Conditions tab, enter the Start and End Dates of tax code applicability for each Tax Group, and assign Conditions and Exceptions to the Tax Code

- In the Fiscal Classification tab, assign Product Fiscal Classification, Transaction Fiscal Classification, and Party Fiscal Classification to the tax code

The Product Fiscal Classification lists lookup codes associated with lookup type AR_TAX_PRODUCT_FISCAL_CLASS. The Transaction Fiscal Classification lists lookup codes associated with lookup type AR_TAX_TRX_BUSINESS_CATEGORY. The Party Fiscal Classification lists lookup codes associated with lookup type AR_TAX_PARTY_FISCAL CLASS. These Lookup types are the same as the Class Codes for Class Category AR_TAX_PARTY_FISCAL_CLASS defined in Oracle TCA.

You must define the Tax Group and associate it with a customer or customer site in order to use the new tax calculation parameters of Product Fiscal Classification, Party Fiscal Classification, and Transaction Business Category to determine applicable Tax Codes. If the Tax Code is associated with a customer or customer site, the Receivables tax engine will not evaluate new tax calculation parameters.

Set the Tax Calculation on the Transaction Type

To set the tax calculation on the transaction type, see Define Transaction Types, page 4-31.

Define AutoAccounting for Tax Lines in Receivables

To define AutoAccounting for tax lines, see Define AutoAccounting, page 4-30.

Set Up Payables

Required

Oracle Lease Management links with the Oracle Payables module to let you make disbursements to pay vendor or supplier invoices. Items that you would typically need to set up include defining or specifying: payables lookups, invoice currency, payment currency, currency exchange types and rates, payment terms, tax codes, withholding tax groups, document categories, pay groups, and open payables periods.

The specific setup steps of Oracle Payables that directly impact Oracle Lease Management include:

- Define Payment Terms

- Define Payables Lookups

For more information on setting up Oracle Payables, see the *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

Define Payment Terms

Required

You need to define payment terms that you can assign to an invoice to automatically create scheduled payments when you submit an approval for an invoice. You can define payment terms to create multiple scheduled payment lines and multiple levels of discounts, and you can create an unlimited number of payment terms. Payment terms have one or more payment term lines, each of which creates one scheduled payment.

For more information on defining payment terms, see the *Oracle Payables User Guide* or the Oracle Applications Help, available in Oracle Payables.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Accounts Payable Super User

Module

Oracle Payables

Navigation

Setup > Invoice > Payment Terms

Define Payables Lookups

Required

A lookup is any defined value that was not defined in a setup window. Use the Oracle Payables Lookups window to review and maintain sets of values, or lookups that you use in Payables.

When you define your payables lookups, you can:

- Search for seeded lookups.

- Review the available types to determine what you need to add.

- Refer to your various product setup documentation to determine required payable

lookups.

- Add or update User or Extensible lookups.

For more information on defining financial options, see the *Oracle Payables User Guide* or the Oracle Applications Help, available in Oracle Payables.

You must enter one Oracle Lease Management–specific payable lookup. On the **Lookups > Payables** page, enter a query of type **SOURCE**. Add a lookup to this list with these values:

```
Code = OKL

Meaning = Oracle Lease Management

Description = Create Payables Invoices from Oracle Lease Management
```

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Accounts Payable Super User

Module

Oracle Payables

Navigation

Setup > Lookups > Payables

Set Up Purchasing

Required

Oracle Lease Management links with Oracle Purchasing.

The specific setup steps of Oracle Purchasing that directly impact Oracle Lease Management include:

- Define Purchasing Lookups

- Define Suppliers

- Define Insurance Providers

- Set Up Document Sequencing of Payables Invoices

For more information on setting up Oracle Payables, see the *Oracle Purchasing User Guide*.

Define Purchasing Lookups

Required

A lookup is any defined value that was not defined in a setup window. Use the Oracle Purchasing Lookups window to review and maintain sets of values, or lookups that you use in Purchasing.

When you define your purchasing lookups, you can:

- Search for seeded lookups.

- Review the available types to determine what you need to add.

- Refer to your various product setup documentation to determine required payable lookups.

- Add or update User or Extensible lookups.

For more information on defining your purchasing lookups, see the *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*.

For Oracle Lease Management, you must define two purchasing lookup types:

- **PAY GROUP**. On the Lookups > Purchasing page, enter a query of type **PAY GROUP**. Add a new lookup to the list with these values:

```
Code = ORACLE LEASE MANAGEMENT

Meaning = Oracle Lease Management

Description = Create Invoices from Oracle Lease Management
```

- **VENDOR TYPE**. On the Lookups > Purchasing page, enter a query of type **VENDOR TYPE**. Add a lookup to the list with these values:

```
Code = Insurer

Meaning = Insurance Provider

Description = Insurance Provider
```

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Accounts Payable Super User

Module

Oracle Payables

Navigation

Setup > Lookups > Purchasing

Define Suppliers

Required

You need to set up suppliers to record information about individuals and companies from whom you purchase goods and services. You can also enter employees whom you reimburse for expense reports. When you enter a supplier that does business from multiple locations, you store supplier information only once, and enter supplier sites for each location. You can designate supplier sites as pay sites, purchasing sites, RFQ only sites (suppliers from whom you receive quotations), or procurement card sites.

Areas about suppliers that you can complete include: general information, classification, accounting, control, payment, bank accounts, Electronic Data Interchange (EDI), various tax issues, purchasing, and receiving.

For more information on defining suppliers, see the *Oracle Payables User Guide* or the Oracle Applications Help, available in Oracle Payables.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Accounts Payable Super User

Module

Oracle Payables

Navigation

Suppliers > Entry

Define Insurance Providers

Required

You must register vendors of insurance products as suppliers in Oracle Payables.

You must set up at least one vendor site per organization unit for all insurance providers. This vendor site is used in sending credits and payments to insurance providers of Lease Management insurance product policies.

You must also set up, or verify that users set up, third-party insurance providers as customers or as Trading Community Architecture (TCA) organization parties. The lookup for third-party providers draws from the TCA model, while the Lease Management setup for providers of insurance products draws from (po_vendor) Purchasing tables.

See Define Insurance and the *Oracle Payables User Guide* for further information.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Accounts Payables Super User

Module

Oracle Payables

Navigation

Suppliers > Entry

Guidelines

On the Classification tab of the Suppliers window appears, perform:

- For the Type, select **Insurer** for the insurance category.

- You can optionally enter the SIC code.

Set Up Document Sequencing of Payables Invoices

Required

To generate invoice numbers, you must set up document sequencing for payables invoices. This is a one-time setup, and you must specify certain values in the following procedures. You can apply this setup to more than one set of books.

The sequence of setup topics for document sequencing of payables invoices is:

- Create Document Sequence

- Define Category

• Assign Category and Sequence

Create Document Sequence

Required

The first part of setting up document sequencing for payables invoices is to create the document sequence. You provide a name, specify the application, effective dates, manual or automatic types, and an initial value.

> **Note:** You create the following document sequence only **one time**. If you use multiple sets of books, then all sets of books will use the same document sequence.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

Oracle Applications--forms

Navigation

Application > Document > Define, Open

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Document Sequences window on one empty row under the Name column, enter **OKL Lease Pay Invoices**.

   > **Note:** You must enter exactly **OKL Lease Pay Invoices**.

2. Under the Application column, click the Ellipses button, and choose the Oracle Lease Management or Contracts for Lease.

3. Under the Effective From and To columns, click the Ellipses button, and choose a starting and ending effective date for your document sequence.

4. Under the Type column, choose **Automatic**.

5. Under the Initial Value column, enter the initial invoice number.

> **Note:** If you are using multiple sets of books, then each book will use the same initial invoice number.

6. Click the Save button.

Define Category

Required

After you have created the document sequence, define the document's sequence category that you assign to a specific table name. In the following procedures, you specify the application; enter code, name, and description; and choose the table name.

> **Note:** You create the following document sequence category only **one time**. If you use multiple sets of books, then all sets of books will use the same document sequence.

Prerequisites

Create Document Sequence

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

Oracle Applications--forms

Navigation

Application > Document > Categories, Open

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Document Categories window on the first blank row under the Application column, click the Ellipses button, and choose the product name for Oracle Lease Management.

2. Under the Code, Name, and Description columns, enter **OKL Lease Pay Invoices**.

    The Code name must be unique, and you must use this name.

3. In the Table Name column, click the Ellipses button and choose **OKL_TRX_AP_INVOICES_B**.

4. Click the Save button.

Assign Category and Sequence

Required

After you have defined the category for document sequence for payables invoices, you can assign the category and the sequence.

If you have multiple sets of books, you must run the following procedures multiple times to assign each sequence and category to another set of books.

Prerequisites

Create Document Sequence

Define Category

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

Oracle Applications--forms

Navigation

Application > Document > Assign, Open

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Sequence Assignments window on the Document tab in the Application column, click the Ellipses button and choose Contracts for Lease or Oracle Lease Management.

2. In the Category column, click the Ellipses button and choose the category that you set up previously.

3. In the Set of Books column, click the Ellipses button and choose the set of books' name to which you want to assign the category.

4. In the Method column, choose Automatic.

5. Click the Save button.

The Assignment tab becomes active. If not, then click the Assignment tab. On the Assignment tab, the system automatically populates both the Application and Category fields.

6. On the Assignment tab, in the Start Date and End Date fields, click the Ellipses buttons and choose the respective dates at which you want the assignment to be effective.

7. Click the Save button.

Set Up Trading Community Architecture

Set Up Sales Tax in TCA

To set up sales tax in Lease Management, you must complete the following tasks in Oracle Trading Community Architecture (TCA)

- Create Class Category and Class Codes

- Associate Class Codes with Customers

Create Class Category and Class Codes

To set up class category and class codes, perform the following steps in the Oracle Trading Community Manager Responsibility:

- Navigate to Administration > Classification

- Click Create Class Category.

- Enter the following class category details:

  Class Category: AR_TAX_PARTY_FISCAL_CLASS

  Class Category Meaning: Party Fiscal Classification For Leasing

  Description: Party Classification for Leasing

  Delimiter: /

  Allow Multiple Parent Codes: No

  Allow Parent Code Assignment: No

  Allow Multiple Class Code Assignments: Yes

  Assign Entities: Select Table Name = HZ_PARTIES

  Conditions: Null

- Click Apply and Create Class Codes.

- Enter the following Class Codes details:

  Class Codes: You can enter any value here. The value entered will be available for selection as Party Fiscal Classification column in Tax Group Definition in Oracle Receivables.

  Meaning: Enter any value.

  Description: Enter any value.

- Save and Compile the Class Categories.

Associate Class Codes with Customers

To associate class codes with customers, perform the following steps in the Oracle Customers Online Superuser Responsibility:

- Navigate to Customer > Organization

- Select any customer and classification from the menu.

- Under General Classification, select Party Fiscal Classification for Leasing and click Go.

- Select the Class Codes to which the customer is to be assigned and enter the Start and End Dates for the assignment.

  > **Note:** The Receivables tax engine will derive class codes associated with a party of the transaction for which the tax call is made. The Class Codes determine the applicability of tax codes in Tax Group evaluation.

5

CRM Implementation Tasks

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Set Up Contracts
- Set Up Service Contracts Counters
- Set Up iStore
- Set Up Order Capture
- Set Up Marketing Online
- Set Up CRM Foundation
- Set Up Telephony
- Set Up Work Queues

Set Up Contracts

Required

Oracle Contracts provides the underlying functionality upon which Oracle Lease Management is built. In particular, the Oracle Contracts rule functionality supplies the basis for the terms and conditions of contracts and agreements (such as master lease agreements, vendor agreements, and investor agreements) in Oracle Lease Management.

Additionally, Oracle Lease Management references contract and agreement articles in Contracts and uses the quality assurance check functionality as well.

You must implement the following in Oracle Contracts in order for Oracle Lease Management to properly use this functionality:

- Add Articles

- Add Additional Quality Assurance Checks

- Set Up New User-Defined Parties For Lease Contracts and Agreements

Add Articles

Required

To reference articles in agreements that you set up in Oracle Lease Management, you must create the articles in Oracle Contracts. Articles, text that describes and details terms and conditions attached to a contract, are used in master lease agreements, vendor agreements, and investor agreements. To attach articles to a specific lease or loan contract, you must reference a master lease agreement.

Oracle Contracts lets you create standard and non-standard articles. However, for Oracle Lease Management, you can create **standard articles, only.** Subsequent references to all standard articles come from the Oracle Contracts library of articles.

> **Note:** Add all articles particular to your business that you may need to reference when creating agreements.

For more details on adding articles, see Defining the Library of Articles section in the *Oracle Contracts User Guide*.

Add Additional Quality Assurance Checks

Optional

Oracle Contracts provides a default quality assurance checklist, which is run every time the QA Checker is called. Oracle Lease Management has an additional seeded checklist called OKL LA QA CHECK LIST, which contains additional processes relevant for lease and loan contracts.

You can add processes to the OKL LA QA CHECK LIST from within Oracle Contracts, but you cannot create new checklists.

For more information, see the Defining Quality Assurance Checklist section of the *Oracle Contracts User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Contracts Manager

Navigation

Setup > Contract > Quality Assurance

Guidelines

When you navigate to the Quality Assurance form, use the Find function, and in the Name field, type OKL LA QA CHECK LIST (this is case sensitive and should be all caps). In the Processes section, add the processes to include in the QA Checker to the existing processes and save your work.

Set Up New User-Defined Parties For Lease Contracts and Agreements

For lease contracts, vendor program agreements, and operating agreements, create new user-defined party roles by contract category in Oracle Contracts.

Responsibility

Lease Contracts Manager

Navigation

Forms > Application Object Library > Lookups, then
Setup > Contract > Categories & Sources > Define Party Roles
(then > Define Party Sources, then > Define Categories)

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In Lookups, query for the Lookup Type: OKC_Party.

2. Associate a party role code by adding a new party role code.

    1. In the Code field, enter the name of the new party role code.

    2. In the Meaning field, enter the meaning of the new party role code.

    3. In the Description field, enter a description.

    4. In the From field, enter the start date.

    5. Click Save.

3. Navigate to Setup > Contract > Categories & Sources > Define Party Sources.

    The Role Sources page is displayed.

    1. Select the party role you created in step 2.

    2. On the Party Sources Tab, in the Source field, select the source; for example, Vendor, Trading Community Architecture (TCA), or Human Resources (HR), and click OK.

The other fields, Description, Intent, and Start Date, are displayed according to the source you selected.

3. Select the Access Level: User or System.

4. Click Save.

4. Navigate to Setup > Contract > Categories & Sources > Define Categories.

The Category page is displayed.

1. Query for Category Code: LEASE (use PROGRAM or OPERATING)

The other fields are populated based on your selection:

Category, Start Date, Access Level, Class = Lease Contract, Description

2. In the Role field, enter the party role you created in step 2.

The Description and Start Date you entered in step 2 are displayed.

3. Click Save to save your work.

See Define Party Contact Roles, page 6-84.

Set Up Service Contracts Counters

Set up Oracle Service Contracts so that usage-based billing created in Service Contracts can be processed and billed through Lease Management.

Prerequisites

Set up Usage Items in Oracle Inventory. See Define Inventory.

Responsibility

Service Contracts Manager

Navigation

Setup > Others > System > Service > Counter

Steps

Set up counters in Oracle Service Contracts.

1. Define a Counter Group.

2. Associate Inventory Items for this counter group.

3. Create one or more counters for the counter group.

4. Specify a Usage Item for each counter.

Set Up iStore

Optional for Custom Remarketing, Required for Standard Remarketing. Oracle iStore lets you establish business-to-business and business-to-consumer electronic commerce. The Oracle iStore application provides an easy-to-use mechanism for merchants to set up Internet storefronts that capture and process customer orders and to integrate their storefronts with Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) applications.

Oracle Lease Management utilizes Oracle iStore during the remarketing process. Assets that are remarketed are logged as items in Oracle Inventory, priced in Oracle Advanced Pricing, and then sold through a speciality store in iStore.

In particular, you must implement the following in Oracle iStore in order for Oracle Lease Management to work:

• Set Up Speciality Stores, page 5-5

You then associate inventory items with Speciality Stores.

Set Up Speciality Stores

Required for iStore, only

In Oracle Lease Management, you must set up at least one speciality store to handle all remarketed assets. Remarketed assets exist as items in Oracle Inventory, which you associate with your speciality store.

> **Note:** You can have more than one speciality store set up in this module, but you need at least one.

To enable the remarketing process, you must associate the iStore with a pricing list in Oracle Pricing and you must also associate an iStore profile option with the Inventory organization you set up in Oracle Inventory.

You must set up an overall hierarchy for the speciality store sections and products, which is covered in the Oracle iStore documentation.

See the Creating Speciality Stores section of the *Oracle iStore Implementation* Guide.

Prerequisites

Set up pricing lists in Oracle Pricing.

Set up an Inventory organization. See Define Inventory, page 4-9.

Responsibility

Oracle iStore Administrator

Module

Oracle iStore

Navigation

Setup > Speciality Store

Guidelines

When configuring your iStore set the Available to Promise (ATP) Enabled attribute to Yes. This ensures that each asset in your iStore is sold only once.

Associate the iStore with the pricing list(s) you set up in Oracle Pricing for your organization.

Set up the profile option IBE: Item Validation Organization to associate with the Inventory organization that you set up for your leasing organization in Oracle Inventory.

See Define Profile Options, page 6-111.

Set Up Order Capture

Required for iStore, only

Oracle Order Capture serves as the integration point between Oracle's suite of CRM applications and Oracle's Order Management system. Oracle Lease Management uses Order Capture in the remarketing process to create quotes based on information obtained from Oracle iStore.

Once a remarketed item is purchased by a customer in iStore, the purchase information is passed to Oracle Order Capture, which then passes the information to Oracle Order Management where a sales order is created. In this process, the system reserves the item in Oracle Inventory against the sales order, so that no other customer can create another sales order against the same item.

For more information on installing this module, see the *Oracle Order Capture Implementation Guide*.

Set Up Marketing Online

Oracle Marketing Online is a database product designed to provide planning, tracking, analysis, and reporting of an organization's marketing activities. In Oracle Lease

Management, Marketing Online functionality enables enterprises to target specific customers for marketing campaigns. For example, when you are remarketing assets, you can use Marketing Online to target customers for specific types of assets.

Oracle Marketing Online lets you create and manage lists and segments of customers and prospects for your marketing activities. You can also organize campaigns and track related tasks, assignments, activities, creative material, and other elements designed to promote or sell concepts, products, and services.

For more information on implementing Oracle Marketing Online, see the *Oracle Marketing Online Implementation Guide.*

Set Up CRM Foundation

Required

CRM Application Foundation consists of a number of modules that are used by the entire CRM suite, including Oracle Lease Management. Of particular importance to Oracle Lease Management are: Interaction History, Fulfillment, Notes, Tasks, Territories, and Resource Manager.

Oracle Foundation must be implemented and installed to insure proper functionality in Oracle Lease Management. See the *Oracle CRM Foundation Concepts and Procedure* guide and the *Oracle CRM Foundation Implementation Guide* for details. The following steps require Lease-specific information when you are enabling the Foundation module.

Oracle CRM Foundation has these implementation tasks, which affect Oracle Lease Management:

- Set Up and Configure Interaction History

- Setup and Configure Fulfillment

- Set Up Notes

- Set Up Territories

- Set Up Resources

- Define Sales Representatives

- Define Remarketers

- Define Assignment Group

Set Up and Configure Interaction History

Required

Interaction History is a collection of tables and business logic that records touch points

between customers and resources for Oracle Applications, including Oracle Lease Management. Interaction History tracks all customer-agent interactions and serves as a repository for the interaction data. Whether the touch point occurs between two computers, a face-to-face conversation, or over various media channels (such as telephony), these patterns are true:

- The system records a touch point as an interaction.

- An interaction comprises a set of one or more business activities.

- An interaction is a historical record; once you create it, you cannot alter or modify it.

- You can relate business activities to media--such as phone, email, or fax.

For Oracle Lease Management, you can optionally make these modifications in Interaction History:

- Define additional outcome codes.

- Define additional result codes.

- Define additional reason codes.

- Define additional action item codes.

- Define additional action codes.

Prerequisites

After you install CRM Application Foundation, you can access the Interaction History graphical interface, Administration, and public APIs to test and use Interaction History functionality.

Responsibility

CRM Administrator

Module

Oracle Foundation

Navigation

Functions > Interaction History Administration

For more information, see the Implementing Interaction History section of the *Oracle CRM Foundation Implementation Guide* and the Understanding Interaction History section of the *Oracle CRM Application Foundation User Guide* guide.

Setup and Configure Fulfillment

Required

Fulfillment provides:

- An automated way to send information to customers electronically through email and fax

- The ability to immediately satisfy a customer's requests for information, literature, and other correspondence.

Customer Service Representatives, for example, handle a variety of requests ranging from product and service inquiries, pricing questions, billing inquiries, and general customer care issues. Both the collections and remarketing areas use fulfillment.

Many of these requests result in some delivery of literature, collateral, forms of application, letters, or correspondence to the customer. Fulfillment provides the ability for call center administrators, mobile field representatives, marketing managers, customer care representatives, and other service agents to respond to different customer needs quickly using email or fax.

Some key features of fulfillment include:

- Providing automated delivery of information to customers using email.

- Supporting multiple types of customizable Fulfillments used in CRM applications such as documents, templates, and collateral.

- Prioritizing requests.

- Merging data into formatted outgoing communication to create consistent personalized messages.

For Oracle Lease Management, you must do the following before the fulfillment functionality can be used:

- You must associate leasing-specific master documents to Oracle Lease Management functional processes. These master documents are provided as leasing-specific templates in the form of HTML files, which you must upload using the standard file upload process outlined in the fulfillment implementation steps.

- You must also upload your lease-specific queries.

- Optionally, you can modify these leasing-specific templates and add new templates. Once they have been uploaded onto the fulfillment server as master documents, they cannot be edited.

- Once you have uploaded all the necessary files and queries, you must map them to

your fulfillment templates. See Define Fulfillment Mapping., page 6-81

- Setting up fulfillment has several required steps and several optional steps. For more information, see the Fulfillment section of the *Oracle CRM Foundation Implementation Guide*.

Prerequisites

Install and verify the stability of:

- CRM Foundation HTML Stack

- Interaction History

- Marketing Encyclopedia Foundation Component (MES)

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

Oracle Foundation

Navigation

The process involves several steps, including setting up a Fulfillment Administrative User and defining and configuring a Fulfillment Server. See the *Oracle CRM Foundation Implementation Guide* for appropriate navigation paths for each task.

Set Up Notes

Optional

A note records descriptive information that users have generated about business transactions so that they can reference it. You can use the Notes component from different applications in the product suite to access the comment log that relates to a specific transaction.

Oracle Notes comes with a set of previously defined note types. You can choose not to use the previously defined note types and create customized note types of your own, or you can use both the previously defined set and additional customized note types.

To use the notes feature in your customer service or collections divisions of Oracle Lease Management, it must be enabled. You can add additional note types specific for leasing.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

CRM Administrator

Module

Oracle Foundation

Navigation

Functions > Notes Setup

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Once you open the **Note Type Setup** page, the **Application Object Library: Note Type Lookups** window appears.

2. Define the code, meaning, and description as desired. It is only necessary to define a tag for a new, customized note type.

3. Save the record when you are finished.

4. To delete an existing note type, assign an end date to an existing note type.

   > **Note:** Mapping a note type to a source object limits the visible note types for that source to the defined subset of note types.

5. To map the note to a source object open the Source page.

6. Click Note Type Mapping.

7. In the Source Object list of values, choose the appropriate source (Contract, Defects, Enhancements, Escalations, or Tasks).

8. Choose a Note Type for the Source.

9. In the Application list of values, choose the application.

10. In the End Date list of values, specify an End date, if desired.

11. Save and close the form.

See the Implementing Notes section of the *Oracle CRM Foundation Implementation Guide*.

Set Up Territories

Required

A territory is an organizational domain with boundaries defined by attributes of customers, products, services, and resources. Territories can be created on multiple criteria including postal code, area code, country, vertical market, size of company, and product expertise. It can be created based on geographic locations, for example, East Coast and West Coast territories. It can also be based on customer name if targeting specific customers or products, for example, Business World territory, or the combination of both geographical location and customers, such as a West Coast Business World territory.

For Oracle Lease Management, you must set up territories for your collections organization's activities. Define your territories, territory qualifiers, and resources.

Set up Territory Manager is described in Implementing Territory Management as part of the *Oracle CRM Foundation Implementation Guide.* Create Territories is described in *Oracle CRM Foundation User Guide* guide.

Prerequisites

Set up and enable Resource Manager.

Responsibility

CRM Administrator

Module

Oracle Foundation

Navigation

Functions > Territory Manager > Territory Administration > Administration

> **Note:** After defining territories using Territory Management, you must run the Generate Territory Package concurrent program to compile the territories and activate your changes.

Set Up Resources

The Resource Manager provides lists of resources—as individuals, groups, and teams— for applications to access and manage their resources. Resources are defined as the employees, supplier contacts, parties and partners that are used by the different CRM components to accomplish business objectives.

You can use Resource Manager to import and view resources, define resources, define

roles and role types, create teams and groups, and organize resources within those teams and groups. Defining and organizing your resource information makes your resources available to the connected application modules for work action.

> **Note:** Employees are resources, which are set up in Oracle Human Resources and can be imported to the Foundation Module. See *Managing People Using Oracle HRMS Release* 11*i* .

For more information, see the Implementing Resource Manager of the *Oracle CRM Foundation Implementation Guide*.

Prerequisites

Enable Resource Manager.

Responsibility

CRM Administrator

Module

Oracle CRM Foundation

Navigation

Functions > Resource Manager > Maintain Resources

Define Sales Representatives

Optional

During the authoring process in Oracle Lease Management, you must associate one or more sales representatives to each contract. A sales representative is a specific role, which you can assign to specific employees within your organization.

For more information, see the Defining a Salesperson section of the *Oracle CRM Application Foundation Concepts and Procedures* guide.

Prerequisites

Configure Resource Manager.

Set up employees in Oracle HRMS. For more information, see Define Employees.

Responsibility

CRM Administrator

Module

Oracle CRM Foundation

Navigation

Resource Manager > Maintain Resources > Resources

Define Remarketers

Required

During the remarketing process in Oracle Lease Management, you must associate a remarketing team with an item category. You perform this in the Setup > Asset Management > Assignments section of Oracle Lease Management. Based on the item category, the remarketing team is associated to the asset, shown on the Asset Return page.

You must define remarketing teams in Oracle CRM Foundation prior to associating them to items in asset management.

To define the marketing team, the team must have:

• Role Type set to Contracts

• Role Code set to Remarketer

You can add individual employees to the team. Optionally, you can set up Groups, which contain employees who perform **like tasks**, and associate that group with a remarketing team. To associate a group with a team, however, you must set up the group first.

For more information, see the Defining Resource Groups and Defining Resource Teams section of the *Oracle CRM Application Foundation Concepts and Procedures* guide.

Prerequisites

Configure Resource Manager.

Set up employees in Oracle HRMS. For information, see Define Employees.

Responsibility

CRM Administrator

Module

Oracle Foundation

Navigation

Resource Manager > Maintain Resources > Teams

(Optionally) Resource Manager > Maintain Resources > Groups

Define Assignment Group

Required

An Assignment Group is the portfolio management team associated to the contract's terms and conditions under the Contract Portfolio section in authoring. This team's responsibility is to field and act upon contract portfolio strategy notifications, which are set up at the time of contract authoring.

This process is similar to defining a remarketing team. To define the assignment group, the group must have:

• Role Type set to Contracts

• Role set to Portfolio Group

Before you set up a portfolio management team, you must set up the employees you intend to include on the team.

Optionally, you can set up a Group, which contain those employees you want on the portfolio team, and associate that group with the team. To associate a group with a team, however, you must set up the group first.

For more information, see the Defining Resource Groups and Defining Resource Teams section of the *Oracle CRM Application Foundation Concepts and Procedures* guide.

Prerequisites

Configure Resource Manager.

Set up employees in Oracle HRMS. See Define Employees.

Responsibility

CRM Administrator

Module

Oracle Foundation

Navigation

Resource Manager > Maintain Resources > Teams

(Optionally) Resource Manager > Maintain Resources > Groups

Set Up Telephony

Implementing Oracle Telephony Manager is a process that requires knowledge of a variety of technologies and processes. The implementation of Oracle Telephony Manager requires working knowledge of Oracle Forms, HTML, Java, and the installation platform (Windows NT or Unix). In addition, an understanding of the operational requirements of an interaction center and basic telephony functionality is required.

The Oracle Telephony Manager (OTM) maintains the agent distribution queues and agent states for any Interaction Center. It also provides access to a common routing engine. OTM is media independent and can route all types of interactions—e-mail, telephony, faxes, or Web calls—to the interaction center agents.

For more information on implementing Telephony Manager, refer to the *Oracle Telephony Manager Implementation Guide*.

Set Up Work Queues

Oracle Universal Work Queue is one of several applications in the Oracle Interaction Center. The Oracle Interaction Center is a suite of applications that supports the management and processing of customer relationship activity across all channels of customer contact.

Oracle Universal Work Queue is a portal for accessing agent work within an interaction center. Agent work includes application work, such as service requests, and media work, such as inbound telephony calls. When you select a work item, Oracle Universal Work Queue launches the appropriate application and, if necessary, a media controller, such as a softphone.

Oracle Universal Work Queue:

• Provides a desktop interface that displays a unified view of agent work.

• Facilitates agents' interactions across multiple contact channels.

• Provides a framework that enables CRM business applications to integrate with media work.

• Balances agents between media types based on the service levels for the interaction center.

For more information, see the *Oracle Universal Work Queue Implementation Guide* and the *Oracle Universal Work Queue User Guide*.

6

Lease Management Application Implementation Tasks

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Define Streams and Pricing

- Define Formulas

- Define Accounting Options

- Define Lease Accounting Templates

- Define Account Generator

- Define Financial Products

- Define Invoice Group Parameters

- Set Up Interest Rates

- Define Late Charges Parameters

- Define Cash Search and Cash Application Rules

- Define Customer Service Setups

- Define Party Contact Roles

- Define Remarketing Functionality

- Define Lease Income Accrual Rules

- Define Loss Provision Rules

- Define Off-Lease Asset Amortization Rules

- Set Up Subsidies

- Set Up Sales Tax

- Set Up Property Tax

- Define Insurance

- Set Up Pricing Engine Integration for Stream Generation

- Define Workflow

- Set Up Credit Checklists

- Customizing Users' Lease Management Home Pages

- Set Up Vendor Residual Sharing

Define Streams and Pricing

This section contains the following topics:

- Define Stream Types

- Associate Financial Products to Lease Price Modeling Software Templates

- Set Up Parameter Conversions For Third-Party Lease Price Modeling Software

- Set Up Book Type Mapping For Third-Party Lease Price Modeling Software

- Define Setups for Pricing Tools

- Set Up For Revenue Recognition on Receipt of Cash

Define Stream Types

This section includes the following topics:

- Overview

- Stream Purposes

- Set Up Stream Types

- Define Stream Generation Template

- Stream Generation

Overview

Lease Management allows you to set up and create stream types to meet your unique business accounting requirements. When creating a new stream type, you must provide a stream type name and a stream type purpose. Appropriate values for the stream type attributes can then be selected. User-defined streams allow you to perform the following functions:

- Create new stream types by stream purpose

- Define stream generation templates

- Associate stream generation templates to accounting template sets and financial products

- Define accrual streams

- Validate financial products

- Add additional pricing parameters to the external stream generation process

For more information on streams, see Streams, Oracle Lease Management User's Guide.

Stream Purposes

During stream type setup, you must select a purpose for each new stream type. Lease Management processes streams based on their purpose.

For more information on Lease Management stream purposes, see Stream Purposes, page B-1.

Set Up Stream Types

This section includes the following topics:

- Create or Update Stream Types

- Search for Stream Types

Create or Update Stream Types

Stream types are created or updated from the Pricing subtab of the Setup tab. You can create as many stream types as you need. Lease Management also provides seeded stream types organized by Purpose Name. For information on seeded stream types, see Stream Purposes, page B-1.

To create stream types, perform the following tasks:

- Provide a name for the steam type

- Specify the stream type purpose

- Enter the stream type attributes

Some attributes are validated based on Purpose. The following table describes field references used when creating or updating stream types.

Field References: Creating or Updating Stream Types

Field	Description
Billable	Specifies whether a stream type is billable or not. Only billable stream types can be used to create payments for a contract.
Taxable	Specifies whether a stream type is taxable. Taxes are calculated at the time of billing.
Capitalized	Capitalizing a stream adds the fee amount into the financed cost of the asset. For example, you can add a stream type representing sales tax, which at the time of booking is added to the asset cost.
Effective Dates	Stream Types cannot be used after the Effective To date. If an Effective To date is not entered, the stream type will not expire. Stream types can be deactivated by entering an Effective To date at a later time.
Description	Optionally, enter a description.
Revenue Recognition Basis	Determines whether Accrual Rules can be ignored. **Note:** Updatable. See Update Accrual Streams, page 6-58.
Contingency Rules	The list of values contains the revenue contingency seeded in Receivables for recognition of revenue on receipt of cash for certain Lease Management invoices. Select Contingency only if the Revenue Recognition basis is Cash Receipt for the stream type.

Search for Stream Types

You can search for a stream type in the Pricing subtab of the Setup tab using the parameters of Name, Purpose, Effective Dates and the attributes of Billable, Taxable, and Capitalize.

Define Stream Generation Template

Before Lease Management can generate streams, you must define a stream generation template. Before using the stream generation template, the following tasks must be completed.

- Create Stream Generation Template

- Select Primary stream types and purposes

- Enter Dependent stream types and purposes

- Enter pricing parameter details

- Associate the stream generation template to an accounting template set and financial product

Create Stream Generation Template

The stream generation template contains all possible streams to be used for contracts with the financial product associated to the template. Each stream generation template must include at least one of each type of the mandatory seeded stream purposes. To determine which seeded stream types are mandatory, see Stream Purposes, page B-1.

The following table describes template attributes from the Create Stream Generation Template page.

Field	Description
Effective Dates	Only contracts with start dates falling between Effective Dates of the stream generation template will be able to use financial products associated with the template.
Product Type	Indicates if the stream generation template is for use in an Investor Product or a Financial Product.
Book Classification	Indicates the book classification of any financial product that the template may be associated to by the accounting template set.

Field	Description
Booking Pricing Engine	Indicates whether the stream generation template will use the internal or external pricing engines to calculate yields and generate streams. All contracts using a financial product associated to a stream generation template will use the pricing engine defined here. **Note:** The pricing engine does not apply to templates used with Investor Products.
Tax Owner	Defines the tax owner: lessee or lessor. The tax owner affects the composition of the template by requiring certain mandatory purposes.
Interest Calculation Basis	Determines what interest calculation basis will be used to calculate interest. This field is not applicable to investor agreements.
Revenue Recognition Method	Determines what revenue recognition method will be used. This field is not applicable to investor agreements.
Days in a Year	Select 360, 365, or Actual.
Days in a Month	Select 30 or Actual.

Select Primary Stream Types and Purposes

After entering stream generation templates, select the primary stream types and purposes in the Primary Stream region of the Create Stream Generation Template page. Some stream purposes may only be defined once, and others may be defined multiple times. Purposes that are defined only once are usually values looked up by an internal program. Purposes that can be defined multiple times on the same template are usually purposes for stream types that you select for the contract or process.

Primary stream purposes are selected when executing actual transactions in the in the life cycle of a contract. Dependent stream purposes are created to support accounting processes around the primary purposes. Dependent streams exist only as an extension of primary streams.

Enter Dependent Stream Types and Purposes

For a given stream purpose, certain dependent stream types are mandatory. You may set up additional streams to be generated whenever the primary stream is used. To determine which dependent streams are mandatory for a primary purpose, see Stream Purposes, page B-1.

Select the stream type name for each dependent stream that will be generated whenever the primary stream is used.

Enter Pricing Names

Pricing names are used in external stream generation only and are codes from external pricing engines that you must associate to the stream type in order to retrieve streams from the external pricing engine.

Enter Pricing Parameter Details

Entering pricing parameter details is an option when using an external pricing engine. Pricing parameters are defined for each financial product and must be associated to a pricing engine name. Lease Management generates streams based on the pricing engine name. Pricing parameters send additional data to the pricing engine during steam generation.

In the Pricing Parameters region of the Create Stream Generation Template page, you can add the pricing parameters for the template, including the Pricing Engine Identifier and Default Value. The Pricing Engine Identifier determines how your parameters are recognized by the external pricing engine. Default pricing parameters can be used during stream generation and modified later.

The Display and Update check boxes provide the ability to view and update pricing parameters during contract booking.

The following table shows pricing engine names for the SuperTRUMP pricing engine for stream purposes based on the primary and dependent stream purposes you select for your template. Pricing names are not required if you are creating a template for use with the internal pricing engine. For additional pricing names, contact your external pricing engine provider.

Pricing Engine Names

Purpose	Pricing Name
Accrued Fee Expense	Single Periodic Expense Accrual
Accrued Fee Income	Single Periodic Income Accrual
Amortized Fee Income	Single Fee Accrual

Purpose	Pricing Name
Book Depreciation	Book Depreciation
Federal Depreciation	Federal Depreciation
Fee Payment (Normal)	Periodic Income
Fee Payment (Single payment income fees that require amortization streams)	Fee
Interest Income	Single Lending Loan Accrual
Interest Payment	Lending Loans Interest
Lease Income	Single Asset Income Accrual
Loan Payment	Lending Loans Debt Service
Principal Balance	Lending Loans Balance
Principal Payment	Lending Loans Principal
Rent	Rent
Rent Accrual	Single Rent Accrual
Security Deposit	Security Deposits
State Depreciation	State Depreciation
Stip Loss Value	StipLoss Value
Subsidy Income	Single Subsidy Income
Termination Value	Termination Value
Unscheduled Principal Payment	Principal Paydowns
Estimated Property Tax	Periodic Income

Associate Stream Generation Template to an Accounting Template Set and Financial Product

Once a stream generation template set has been completed, it must be associated to an accounting template set and financial product. An accounting template set can have only one stream generation template.

When the accounting template set is associated to a financial or investor product, the stream generation template becomes associated to the product. This association allows Lease Management to find the correct stream template to use for a contract based on the effective date.

To associate a stream generation template to an accounting template set, see Associate Financial Products to Lease Price Modeling Software Templates.

Stream Generation

The streams generated for a contract depend on the stream generation method and the contract's financial product. For more information on stream generation, see Stream Generation and Management, Oracle Lease Management User's Guide.

Associate Financial Products to Lease Price Modeling Software Templates

Optional

During contract authoring, you have to determine accounting rules and other terms and conditions that drive the financial aspects of your contract. Once you've defined these, you can generate streams. Generating streams produces schedules of dates and amounts used for billing and accounting and produces yields for the contract. In complex pricing scenarios, you can use lease price modeling software to generate streams, which evaluate thousands of pricing parameters. In these cases, the pricing structure might involve a myriad of possibilities, including uneven rents, skipped payments, and multiple interest rates for periods within the term of the contract.

In Oracle Lease Management, the accounting of a particular contract is defined by a financial product. You can associate financial products in Oracle Lease Management with template files in your lease price modeling software. This lets you set default values in a template within your software and relate them to certain products in Oracle Lease Management.

> **Note:** To proceed with this step, your lease price modeling software must support templates.

For example, in a leasing enterprise, your lease price modeling software differentiates leases and loans, since these two deal types use different pricing. You can set up templates that default certain values for these two types of contracts.

In Oracle Lease Management, you can configure financial products that account for leases and loans differently. While loans concern only interest and principal, a lease can impact many other factors, such as equity and depreciation. You can map these

products to pricing templates in your pricing software, similarly configured to account for these two separate deal types.

Prerequisites

Setup Oracle Lease Management financial products. See Define Financial Products, page 6-43.

Configure pricing templates in your lease price modeling software and insure they are physically stored on the correct server path.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Pricing > Product Pricing Templates

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click Create Template.

2. In the Product field, enter a partial search string or click Go and select the name of the financial product to associate with a pricing template.

3. In the Name field, type the exact name (case sensitive) of the template to associate with the financial product.

    Oracle Lease Management uses Oracle XML Gateway technology to transfer information into and out of the lease price modeling software. You **must** type the name of the template **exactly** as it appears in the lease price modeling software, including the file extension, such as **.tem**).

4. In the Template Path, enter the exact path to where the template file is located on the server for your lease price modeling software.

    You must include the forward slash at the end of the path.

    > **Note:** The template files must exist on the server, or the application will generate an error.

5. Select an Effective From date and, optionally, select an Effective To date.

    You cannot use a template after the Effective To date. If you leave this field blank, the template is available indefinitely. Later, you can specify an Effective To date to stop using it.

6. Enter a Description for the pricing template.

7. Click Create.

Set Up Parameter Conversions For Third-Party Lease Price Modeling Software

To properly model depreciation during stream generation and pricing, you should map the depreciation methods and pro rate conventions you set up in Oracle Assets to those in your lease price modeling software.

This mapping is case sensitive and the values must be entered exactly as they exist in the third-party software.

Prerequisites

The third-party lease pricing modeling software you are using must be defined in your lookups. See Define Lookups, page 3-6.

Set up depreciation methods and pro rate conventions in Oracle Assets.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Pricing > Conversions

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. At the Conversion main page, in the Parameters field, choose the parameter for which to map values.

   When you choose the parameter, a table appears that lets you enter the necessary mappings.

2. In the Oracle Value field, click the Flashlight icon and choose the depreciation method value from Oracle Assets to map.

3. In the Pricing Engine Value, enter the value of the parameter that you are mapping the Oracle Value to.

   The pricing engine value is case sensitive and MUST be entered exactly as it appears in the third-party lease price modeling software.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for all the values to map for the selected parameter.

5. Click the Update to save your work.

6. After saving your mapping, you can go back and choose a new parameter (for example, pro rate convention) and repeat the process.

Guidelines

You can remove any value mapping by selecting the radio button in the Remove column to the left of the value to delete and click Update.

It is extremely important that you map **all** values that you intend to use during your lease pricing exercises. If you do not map all the values, errors will occur.

Set Up Book Type Mapping For Third-Party Lease Price Modeling Software

Optional

If the third-party lease price modeling software that you use for pricing differentiates between federal and state tax depreciation, you must set up those tax books in Oracle Assets. Because you can set up different depreciation settings for the same asset category in Oracle Assets by book, you must indicate which tax books to use for state taxes and which books to use for federal tax purposes to get the correct depreciation streams from the lease price modeling software you are using.

You must map the appropriate Oracle Assets tax book to the appropriate taxing body--such as federal or state--for all tax books your business uses. See Define Books and Asset Categories, page 4-5.

If your business uses multiple corporate books, which have multiple tax books associated with them, you must set up this mapping for all books that you intend to use during your business operation.

Prerequisites

You must set up corporate and tax books in Oracle Assets. For more information, see the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

You also must define the name of your third-party lease price modeling software in lookups during general implementation. See Define Lookups, page 3-6.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Pricing > Book Type Mapping

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. On the Book Type Mapping page, if you have mapped any tax books, those mappings appear in the table at the bottom of the page.

2. In the Tax Book field, click the Flashlight icon and choose the tax book from Oracle Assets to map from the list of values.

3. In the Depreciation field, choose whether the tax book should be referenced for Federal or State calculations.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for all tax books you are using in your business.

5. Click Update to save your work.

Guidelines

If you are using the same tax book for both federal and state calculations, you still must map that tax book to both values.

You can remove any tax book mapping by selecting the radio button in the Remove column to the left of the value to delete and click Update.

Define Setups for Pricing Tools

Create Item Residuals

Item residuals can be created as specific number or as a percentage of the asset cost. The values are entered for an item, item category, or a residual category set. The residual category set is a group of items or item categories that you create for the purpose of setting common residual values. The values you set up can be used to determine end of term values for the items you select on sales quotes in the quoting process. To create item residuals, enter item residual details on the Create Item Residual page of the Origination subtab of the Setup tab. Click Apply.

For more information on item residuals, see Pricing Overview, *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*.

The following table describes item residual details.

Create Item Residual Fields

Field	Description
Source Type	From the inventory setup: Item, Item Category, Residual Category Set.

Field	Description
Item	Select the inventory item or item category for which an item residual value is to be assigned.
Residual Type	Indicates whether an item residual is an Amount or a Percentage.
Currency	Determines the currency used.
Status	Indicates whether an item residual is New, Active, or Inactive.
Term	Term of the residual value.
Residual Value	Enter the value, as an Amount or Percentage, for the item or item category selected.

Create Residual Category Sets

Residual Category Sets allow you to group together inventory items with similar residual values. You create residual category sets, and assign inventory categories to the sets.

For more information on residual category sets, see Pricing Overview, *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*.

To create a residual category set, enter residual category set details in the Create Residual Category Set page of the Origination subtab of the Setup tab. Click Apply when done. The following table describes residual category set fields.

Field	Description
Name	Name of the residual category set
Description	Optional description of the residual category set
Source Type	From the inventory setup: Item, Item Category, Residual Category Set
Status	Items or item categories can be removed from a residual category set if the status is Inactive

Field	Description
Item	Item to be associated to the residual category set

Create Criteria Categories

Eligibility criteria can be assigned to financial products, lease rate sets, standard rate templates, and program agreements business objects. You can enter criteria values when you create new versions of each object that will control how the version can be used on a sales quote or lease application. To add criteria values to these business objects, you must first create criteria categories and associate the category to the business object class, also known as the source type. Categories are also created for use in defining adjustment types for adjustment matrices.

For more information on eligibility criteria and criteria categories, see Pricing Overview, *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*.

To create criteria categories, enter criteria category details in the Create Criteria Category page of the Pricing subtab of the Setup tab. To create a new eligibility criteria, select Eligibility Criteria Category from the menu and click Go. Click Apply when done. The following table describes eligibility criteria category fields.

Eligibility Criteria Category Fields

Field	Description
Name	Name of the eligibility criteria category
Description	Optional description
Value Type	Multiple, Range, or Single
Data Type	Number, Date, or Varchar2
Sourced	Yes or No
Enabled	Yes or No
Evaluation Function	Provides evaluation of the eligibility criteria category in the context of an object.

To create an adjustment category, select Create Adjustment Category in the Criteria

Categories page and click Go. Enter adjustment category details and click Apply. The following table describes Create Adjustment Category page fields.

Create Adjustment Category Fields

Field	Description
Name	Name of the adjustment category
Description	Optional description of the adjustment category
Value Type	Range, Single, or Multiple
Data Type	Number, Date, or Varchar2
Sourced	Yes or No
Enabled	Yes or No
Evaluation Function	Provides evaluation of the criteria category in the context of an object.

Set Up For Revenue Recognition on Receipt of Cash

To create a Stream Type for cash basis receipts:

In Create Stream Type, name a stream type and select the seeded purpose, for example, Fee Payment.

In **Revenue Recognition Basis** (formerly **Accrual Rules**) the values include:

Accrual – With Rule: Income is accrued after evaluating the accrual rules.

Accrual – Without Rule: Income is accrued without evaluating the accrual rules. Cash Receipt: Income is not accrued.

Select **Cash Receipt**.

In the Contingency field, select the default: **Collectible**. Lease Management uses the collectibility contingency functionality in Oracle Receivables to defer revenue.

Select appropriate values for other stream type attributes.

Create the stream generation template and accounting template using the cash basis stream type. Associate the accounting template set to a product, create a contract, and run billing transactions using standard procedures.

These setups will generate cash basis accounting in Oracle Receivables processing.

When you run the concurrent programs to calculate the general loss provision, the program will exclude open invoices generated from stream types with Cash Receipts revenue recognition basis.

Define Formulas

These implementation tasks affect the setup of Oracle Lease Management formulas:

- Define Formula Functions

- Define Non-Standard Function Parameters

- Define Contexts

- Define Formula Operands

- Define Formula

The Formula Engine is a tool that lets you define custom formulas and process them.

Oracle Lease Management processes formulas in many different areas. Formulas are always relevant to either a particular contract or an individual line on a contract. Examples of formulas that Oracle Lease Management uses include asset residual, contract original equipment cost, and contract capitalized fees.

The components of a formula are **operands**, **functions**, and **function parameters**. Formulas execute within **contexts**. For more information on these terms and the concepts underlying formulas, see Formula Engine, *Oracle Lease Management Implementation Guide*.

You can create or modify formulas and some of their components.

> **Note:** To perform any task relating to formulas, it is essential that you understand how the Formula Engine works. See Formula Engine, *Oracle Lease Management Implementation Guide*.

Define Formula Functions

The basis of all formulas is data that exists in one or more database tables. You extract the data and make it available to formulas via functions.

A function is a unit of code, written in PL/SQL, which when executed returns a single value. Formulas effectively combine the results of one or more functions to produce an overall value.

To include a new function, either as part of the process of creating a new formula or to add the function to an existing formula, create the source PL/SQL function and store it in the database. For more information, see Formula Engine, *Oracle Lease Management Implementation Guide*.

After you have created the source PL/SQL function, you define the formula function in Oracle Lease Management; this step registers the function in Oracle Lease Management so that it can be used in formulas.

Prerequisites

Create the source PL/SQL function in the database package OKL_SEEDED_FUNCTIONS_PVT.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Functions

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click Create.

2. On the Create Function page, enter the Name for the function, and optionally, the Description.

3. Enter the Effective From date, and optionally, the Effective To date.

    The optional Effective To date determines when to stop using the function. If you do not specify an Effective To, the function is available for use indefinitely.

4. Enter the Source Function that you are registering.

    > **Note:** The name of the source function must include the package name, that is OKL_SEEDED_FUNCTIONS_PVT.<Function Name>.

5. Click Create.

See Also

Formula Engine, page D-1

Define Non-Standard Function Parameters

If a function requires parameters other than the standard **contract** and **line id** parameters, then define the non-standard function parameters.

To define the non-standard function parameters, search for the function, select the

function, and choose to create or edit function parameters.

Prerequisites

Create the source PL/SQL function in the database package OKL_SEEDED_FUNCTIONS_PVT.

Define Formula Functions, page 6-17.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Functions

> **Note:** To define each function parameter, you must follow the Navigation path, and then perform all the steps as described in this section.

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Search for the function.

2. In the Results panel, click the function name hypertext link.

3. Click the Function Parameters button.

4. Click the Create Function Parameter button.

5. In the Function Parameters area, click the Create Function Parameter button.

6. Enter the Sequence of the function parameter.

7. Select the Parameter.

8. If the function parameter has a static value in the source function, enter this value in the Static Value field.

9. Optionally, enter instructions.

10. Click Create.

See Also

Formula Engine, page D-1.

Define Contexts

Each formula executes within a context. A context is basically a container for formulas that enables the efficient passing of parameter values to the functions of a formula.

You must associate each formula that you create with a context. If you do not have a context that you can associate with your formula, then you must create the context. You can associate a formula with only one context, but you can associate many formulas to the same context.

For more information, see Formula Engine, page D-1.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Contexts

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click the Create Context button.

2. Enter the context Name, and optionally the Description.

3. Click Create.

> **Note:** If you have to create context parameters, see Create the Context Parameters and Formula Engine, page D-1, and perform the procedures in both sections.

Define Formula Operands

A formula is an arithmetic expression consisting of operands and arithmetic symbols.

For example, the formula:

```
Commission := Delta Amount * 0.05 + Group Bonus
```

consists of three formula operands:

- - Delta Amount

- 0.05

- Group Bonus

> **Note:** The terms **operand** and **formula operand** are interchangeable.

An operand has one of three types:

- **Formula**

- **Constant**--which can be the result of an expression

- **Function**

Before you create or alter a formula, you must define the operands that appear in the formula. For more information, see Formula Engine, page D-1.

Prerequisites

Create the source PL/SQL function in the database.

If you are creating an operand of the type formula, you must have defined the formula in Oracle Lease Management.

If you are creating an operand of the type function, you must have defined the formula function in Oracle Lease Management. For more information, see Define Formula Functions.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Operands

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click Create Operand.

2. On the Operand page, enter the Name for the operand, and optionally, the Description.

3. Enter the Effective From date, and optionally, the Effective To date.

   The optional Effective To date determines when to stop using the operand. If you do not specify an Effective To, the operand is available for use indefinitely.

4. In the Operand Type field, select the type of operand: Function, Constant, or

Formula.

5. If, for your Operand Type, you chose

   - **Function**: Select the Function Name.

   - **Formula**: Select the Formula Name.

   - **Constant**: Enter the constant or expression in the Constant Value field.

6. Click Create.

Define Formula

Each formula must be created within a context. As you create the formula, you must specify the context name for the formula.

You must enter the formula string, which is an arithmetic expression consisting of labels of operands and the symbols **+ - * / ( ).**

Once you have created an operand it is available for use in a formula string. However you do not enter the operand name itself into the formula string; instead, you must create a label for the operand, and use the label in the formula string. An operand label is a shortcut or alias for an operand.

The procedure for creating the formula is a two-stage process:

- Define Formula and Formula String: Create the formula, including the formula string containing operand labels and symbols. You create a formula string before creating the actual operand labels.

- Define Formula Operand Label: Create the operand labels for the formula.

For more information, see Formula Engine, page D-1.

Define Formula and Formula String

Prerequisites

Create the source PL/SQL function in the database.

If you are creating a formula type operand of the type formula, you must have defined the formula in Oracle Lease Management. For more information, see Define Formula.

If you are creating a function type operand, you must have defined the formula function in Oracle Lease Management. For more information, see Define Formula Functions and Define Formula Operands.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Formulas

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click Create Formula.

2. On the Formulas page, enter the formula Name, and optionally, the Description.

3. Enter the Effective To date, and optionally, the Effective From date.

   The optional Effective To date determines when to stop using the formula. If you do not specify an Effective To, the formula is available for use indefinitely.

4. Choose the Context for this formula.

5. In the formula String field, enter your formula.

   The string must consist of formula operand labels that you define in Define Formula Operand Label and one or more of the symbols: **+ - * / ( )**.

6. Click Create.

Define Formula Operand Label

Once you have created the formula and formula string, you must create the operand labels. To create operand labels, you must:

1. Search for the formula.

2. Select the formula.

3. Choose to create or edit formula operands. This final step is where you actually create or edit the operand labels that the formula string uses.

Prerequisites

Define Formula and Formula String

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Search for the formula.

2. In the Results area, click the formula name's hypertext link.

3. Click the Formula Operands button.

4. Click the Create Formula Operand button.

5. Enter the Label for the operand name.

6. Select the operand to associate with the label into the Name field.

7. Click Create.

> **Note:** To define each formula operand label, you must repeat steps 1 though 7 as described previously in this section.

Define Accounting Options

Required

You must associate a set of books, set the rounding options, and set the accrual options for each operating unit of your enterprise.

Multiple operating units can be associated with the same set of books. The user who performs the setup must be associated (through profile options) with the operating unit to which you are assigning this set of books.

Rounding options address those situations where general accounting practices or currency conversion leads to split (non-whole number) monetary amounts. Typically, this situation occurs in leasing whenever a percentage is figured into the calculation, such as calculating interest. The other scenario occurs when a leasing transaction is made in a currency other than your functional currency and you must make a conversion.

You must set the rounding options for both scenarios. You must consider these parameters in both cases:

•   Apply the rounding difference. Possible values include:

- **Add to the highest amount line.**

- **Add to the lowest amount line.**

- **Add a new rounding line.**

  Typically, the rounded difference is added to the highest amount line. This needs to be set so that the accounting balances on the bottom line.

- Set the rounding rule. The possible values are:

  - **Up**: Rounds the number up to the nearest acceptable number.

  - **Down**: Rounds down to the nearest acceptable number.

  - **Nearest**: Round to the nearest acceptable number.

The Accrual Reversal Days determines how many days of prior income should be reversed in the event that a contract becomes delinquent.

> **Note:** This setup must be done separately for each operating unit of your enterprise.

Prerequisites

Define functional currency, operating units, and a set of books.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Accounting > Accounting Options

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Set of Books field, select the set of books from the list of values to associate with the operating unit.

2. Under the Accounting Line Rounding Options section, choose how to Apply Rounding Difference from the list.

3. Choose the Rounding Rule.

4. Under the Gross Currency Rounding Options section, repeat steps 2–3.

5. Under the Accrual Options section, enter a numeric value for your Accrual Reversal Days.

    This is the number of days of prior income to reverse in the event that a contract becomes delinquent. For example, by entering 90 you would be reversing 90 days of prior income.

6. Click Create.

Define Lease Accounting Templates

These implementation tasks affect the setup of Oracle Lease Management lease accounting templates:

- Define Accounting Template Sets, page 6-26

- Define Accounting Templates, page 6-27

- Define Accounting Template Lines, page 6-29

Define Accounting Template Sets

Many accounting transactions, including booking a contract, billing, and funding, generate one or more accounting entries. The three main components that control which accounting entries are generated are product, transaction type and stream generation template.

Each Oracle Lease Management product is always associated with one and only one accounting template set.

> **Note:** It is possible to associate the same accounting template set to multiple products.

An accounting template set is a group of accounting templates. Each accounting template and its associated template lines specify the accounts and the distribution of the amounts in the accounts.

A stream generation template must be added to each accounting template set.

Prerequisites

Define your accounting options. For more information, see Define Accounting Options.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Accounting > Accounting Template

Steps

From the Accounting Template Sets page, click Create Accounting Template Set. Enter the template details and associate the template to a Stream Template. One stream template can be selected for each accounting template.

Define Accounting Templates

Each accounting template defines the accounts and accounting entries that are generated for an accounting transaction. The accounting templates use various parameters, some of which are mandatory or significant.

Mandatory Parameters

In an accounting template, the mandatory parameters to be defined are:

- **Transaction type:** Defines an accounting event, such as funding, booking, billing, or disbursement.

- **Stream type:** An accounted-for financial element or schedule, such as rent, security deposit, and interest income.

Significant Parameter

Another significant parameter in the account template is:

- A **formula**, if the amount to be accounted is to be evaluated rather than provided by the transaction.

    > **Note:** A formula is required if the transaction type is one of the following:
    >
    > Asset Condition, Asset Disposition, Asset Residual Change, Booking, Funding, Insurance, Rebook, Release, Remarket, Renewal, Repurchase, Restructure, Retirement, Reverse, Split Asset, Split Contract, Investor, Termination, Vendor Cure, or Write Down

Other Parameters

Other parameters in the account template are:

- A flag to indicate whether factoring or investor is appropriate.

- A memo field, which indicates if there is alternative accounting for the same transaction.

Prerequisites

Define Accounting Options

Define Accounting Template Sets

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Accounting > Accounting Template

From the results section, click an existing Accounting Template Set.

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. At the Accounting Template Set Details page, click the Accounting Templates button.

   The Accounting Templates page appears.

2. Click the Create Accounting Template button.

3. At the Create Accounting Template page, enter the Name of the accounting template.

4. Choose an Effective From date, the start date of the accounting template before which the accounting template cannot be used.

5. Optionally choose an Effective To date, the end date of the accounting template, after which you do not want to use the accounting template.

6. Choose a Stream Type.

7. Choose a Transaction Type from the list of values.

   The list of values shows only those transactions that have an accounting impact.

8. If your accounting template needs a formula, click the Search icon beside the Formula field and select a formula from the Formula list.

9. Optionally, enter a Description.

10. Choose the appropriate Factoring or Investor option.

    The default value is Null.

    > **Note:** if the Investor option is chosen for one of the accounting templates in an accounting template set, it must be chosen for all the other accounting templates in the same accounting template set.

11. Choose whether to enable the Memo field.

    The Memo field indicates if there is alternate accounting for the same transaction. For example, in the case of accrual of income for delinquent accounts, you can transfer the income to alternate accounts.

    > **Note:** To account for accruals, you must create two accounting templates, each with the transaction type Accruals within the same accounting template set.
    >
    > One of the accounting templates must have the Memo field set to No (for an income account), the other must have the Memo field set to Yes (for a non-income account).

12. Click the Create button.

Define Accounting Template Lines

Each accounting template line belongs to exactly one accounting template and contains the account and amount distribution information necessary for an accounting entry.

In each accounting template line, you must either define an account code (flexfield) or specify that an Account Generator build the account code (flexfield) using the data available from the transaction and the rules defined for the account type.

Account generator rules are user extensible. You can include additional values under the lookup OKL_AE_LINETYPE using the Application Developer responsibility for AOL lookups.

You create at least one debit line and one credit line for each accounting template.

You can create more than one debit and credit line per accounting template. Where there are multiple debit (or credit) lines, the total of all the debit (or credit) percentages must be 100.

Prerequisites

Define Accounting Template Sets

Define Accounting Templates

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Accounting > Accounting Template

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Navigate to the Accounting Template Details page, for the accounting template for which you want to create accounting template lines.

2. Click the Template Lines button.

   The Accounting Templates Lines Details page appears.

3. Choose whether the accounting line is a Debit or a Credit.

4. Enter the percentage for this accounting line.

   The percentage field specifies the portion of the total amount to be accounted to the account selected.

5. If you are specifying an exact account, you can do one of the following:

   • Enter the exact account by keying it into the Account field, then continue at step 7.

   • Click the icon beside the Account field; in the Select a Flex Alias screen, you can then either select one of the listed aliases, or you can click Flex Details Page to set up your own account; then continue at step 7.

6. If you want the Account Generator to evaluate the account for this accounting line:

   • Leave the Account field blank.

   • Select the Account Generator box.

   • Select the Account Generator Rule that determines the type of accounting you want for this accounting template line. For more information, see Define Account Generator.

7. If you need more account lines, click the Add Another Row button and repeat steps 3 through 6.

8. Click Submit.

Define Account Generator

Optional

In Oracle Lease Management, you can employ the Account Generator to dynamically create accounting code combinations for transactions at run-time. Accounting code combinations are your debit and credit accounts that are part of each accounting transaction.

In an accounting template, you can use exact account codes or you can choose to build the account codes dynamically for each line. The Account Generator builds the account codes dynamically based on parameters provided by the transaction.

If you choose to build an account code dynamically for an accounting template line, you must specify an account generator rule for the accounting template line. Each account generator rule is one of the seeded Oracle Lease Management accounting line types; examples are accrual clearing, advanced rent, lease rent, pre funding, revenue clearing.

The object of the Account Generator is, for each account generator rule, to set each segment of the account code to either a constant value or the value from the flexfield column in a source table.

The setup sequence for the account generator sources and rules is as follows:

- Associate the account generator rule with a source table and flexfield column

- Specify for each segment whether the value is constant or taken from a source table column flexfield

Once you have set up the account generator sources and rules, you use them when you create an accounting template line; all you have to do is to select the account generator rule that you want for the accounting template line. For more information, see Define Accounting Template Lines.

To enable the Account Generator, you **must**:

- Define Account Generator Sources

- Define Account Generator Rules

Define Account Generator Sources

Optional

If you plan to have accounting templates that incorporate dynamic generation of all or some account code flexfield values, you must define your account generator sources, by mapping each account generator rule with a source.

An account generator rule is a seeded list which is user extensible. Some examples are accrual clearing, advanced rent, lease rent, pre funding, and revenue clearing.

Sources are seeded table and column names defined in various Oracle applications, such as Oracle Receivables or Oracle Assets. An example of a source is the column Asset Clearing in the Asset Categories table in Oracle Assets.

When defining the Account Generator Sources, you associate each account generator rule with a source.

Prerequisites

None

Navigation

Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. On the Account Generator Sources page, click the Create Account Generator Source button.

   The Create Account Generator Source page appears.

2. From the list of values, choose the Account Generator Rule.

3. From the list of values, choose the Source Table value.

   This is the table containing the source flexfield that you are mapping to the account type corresponding to the account generator rule.

   Depending on which source table you choose, the possible values in the Select Column list of values change accordingly.

4. Choose the flexfield column you want from the Select Column list of values.

   This is a defined instance of the source flexfield.

   A source table can have multiple columns. For example, the source table Asset Categories has the flexfield columns Accumulated Depreciation, Asset Clearing, Asset Cost, and Bonus Reserve.

5. Click Create.

See Also

Define Accounting Templates

Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide

Account Generator Sources

The following table lists Account Generator Sources.

Account Generator Sources

Application Name	Page Name	Input Parameter	Labels
Oracle Assets	Asset Categories	Asset Category + Asset Book	Asset Cost
			Asset Clearing
			Accumulated Depreciation
			Accumulated Depreciation
			Bonus Reserve
Oracle Payables	Financial Options -- Accounting	Operating Unit	Liability
			Prepayment
			Discount Taken
			PO Rate Variance Gain
			PO Rate Variance Loss
Oracle Payables	Supplier Site -- Accounting	Supplier Site	Liability
			Prepayment
			Future Dated Payment
Oracle Receivables	Customer Site - Accounts	Customer Bill To Site	Receivable

Application Name	Page Name	Input Parameter	Labels
			Revenue
			Tax
			Freight
			Clearing
			Unbilled Receivable
			Unearned Revenue
Oracle Receivables	Transaction Types	Transaction Type	Receivable
			Revenue
			Tax
			Freight
			Clearing
			Unbilled Receivable
			Unearned Revenue
Oracle Foundation	Resource	Employee	Freight
			Revenue
			Receivable
Oracle Inventory	Master Item - Purchasing	Item	Expense Account

Define Account Generator Rules

Optional

After you define account generator sources, you can set Account Generator Rules, whereby you designate which segments in a flexfield contain a constant value and

which derive their value from a flexfield in a source table.

Prerequisites

Set up account generator sources.

Navigation

Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Rules

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Select the Account Generator Rule.

   In the Results area, all the defined segments appear.

2. For each segment, choose a source or a constant.

   If you choose a constant, that value you input never changes for this account type. Choosing a source enables the Account Generator to dynamically update the value from the column specified when you defined the account generator source. For more information, see Define Account Generator Sources.

3. Click Update.

Account Generator Transaction Types

The following table lists Account Generator Transaction Types.

Account Generator Transaction Types

Transaction Type	Application Name	Page Name	Field	Input Parameter from Transaction	Contract Asset level Parameter
Funding	Receivables	Customer Site-Accounts	Receivable	Customer Bill-to-site	Contract
			Revenue		
			Tax		
			Freight		

Transaction Type	Application Name	Page Name	Field	Input Parameter from Transaction	Contract Asset level Parameter
			Clearing		
			Unbilled Receivable		
			Unearned Revenue		
Funding	Payables	Financial Option-Accounting	Liability	Operating Unit	Contract
			Prepayment		
			Discount Taken		
			PO Rate Variance Gain		
			PO Rate Variance Loss		
Funding	Foundation	Sales Representative	Freight	Sales Person	Contract
			Revenue		
			Receivable		
Funding	Receivables	Transaction Type	Receivable	Transaction Type	Contract
			Revenue		
			Tax		

Transaction Type	Application Name	Page Name	Field	Input Parameter from Transaction	Contract Asset level Parameter
			Freight		
			Clearing		
			Unbilled Receivable		
Booking	Receivables	Customer Site - Accounts	Receivable	Customer Bill-to-site	Contract
		Revenue			
		Tax			
		Freight			
		Clearing			
		Unbilled Receivable			
		Unearned Revenue			
Booking	Payables	Financial Option-Accounting	Liability	Operating Unit	Contract
			Prepayment		
			Discount Taken		
			PO Rate Variance Gain		

Transaction Type	Application Name	Page Name	Field	Input Parameter from Transaction	Contract Asset level Parameter
			PO Rate Variance Loss		
Booking	Foundation	Sales Representative	Freight	Sales Person	Contract
			Revenue		
			Receivable		
Booking	Receivables	Transaction Type	Receivable	Transaction Type	Contract
			Revenue		
			Tax		
			Freight		
			Clearing		
Rebook	Receivables	Customer Site - Accounts	Receivable	Customer Bill-to-site	Contract
			Revenue		
			Tax		
			Freight		
			Clearing		
			Unbilled Receivable		
			Unearned Revenue		

Transaction Type	Application Name	Page Name	Field	Input Parameter from Transaction	Contract Asset level Parameter
Rebook	Payables	Financial Option-Accounting	Liability	Operating Unit	Contract
			Prepayment		
			Discount Taken		
			PO Rate Variance Gain		
Rebook	Foundation	Sales Representative	Freight	Sales Person	Contract
			Revenue		
			Receivable		
Rebook	Receivables	Transaction Type	Receivable	Transaction Type	Contract
			Revenue		
			Tax		
			Freight		
			Clearing		
			Unbilled Receivable		
			Unearned Revenue		

Transaction Type	Application Name	Page Name	Field	Input Parameter from Transaction	Contract Asset level Parameter
Miscellaneous	Receivables	Customer Site - Accounts	Receivable	Customer Bill-to Site	Contract
			Revenue		
			Tax		
			Freight		
			Clearing		
			Unbilled Receivable		
			Unearned Revenue		
Miscellaneous	Payables	Financial Option-Accounting	Liability	Operating Unit	Contract
			Prepayment		
			Discount Taken		
			PO Rate Variance Gain		
			PO Rate Variance Loss		
Miscellaneous	Foundation	Sales Representative	Freight	Sales Person	Contract
			Revenue		

Transaction Type	Application Name	Page Name	Field	Input Parameter from Transaction	Contract Asset level Parameter
			Receivable		
Miscellaneous	Receivables	Transaction Type	Receivable	Transaction Type	Contract
			Revenue		
			Tax		
			Freight		
			Clearing		
			Unbilled Receivable		
			Unearned Revenue		
Billing/ Credit Memo / Debit Memo/ Disbursement	Receivables	Customer Site - Accounts	Receivable	Customer Bill-to-site	Contract
			Revenue		
			Tax		
			Freight		
			Clearing		
			Unbilled Receivable		

Transaction Type	Application Name	Page Name	Field	Input Parameter from Transaction	Contract Asset level Parameter
Billing/ Credit Memo / Debit Memo/ Disbursement	Payables	Financial Option- Accounting	Liability	Operating Unit	Contract
			Prepayment		
			Discount Taken		
			PO Rate Variance Gain		
			PO Rate Variance Loss		
Billing/ Credit Memo / Debit Memo/ Disbursement	Foundation	Sales Representative	Freight	Sales Person	Contract
			Revenue		
			Receivable		
Billing/ Credit Memo / Debit Memo/ Disbursement	Receivables	Transaction Type	Receivable	Transaction Type	Contract
			Revenue		
			Tax		
			Freight		

Transaction Type	Application Name	Page Name	Field	Input Parameter from Transaction	Contract Asset level Parameter
			Clearing		
			Unbilled Receivable		
			Unearned Revenue		
Billing/ Credit Memo / Debit Memo/ Disbursement	Inventory	Master Item	Expense Account	Item	Asset
Billing/ Credit Memo / Debit Memo/ Disbursement	Assets	Asset category	Asset Cost	Asset Category + Asset Book	Asset
			Asset Clearing		
			Accumulated Depreciation		
			Bonus Reserve		

Define Financial Products

These implementation tasks affect the setup of Oracle Lease Management financial products:

- Define Template Quality Name and Value

- Define Qualities Name and Values

- Define Options and Option Values

- Define a Product Template

- Define a Product

A product in Oracle Lease Management groups together a set of attributes and rules upon which contracts are created. It is mandatory for every contract to be associated with a single product.

The attributes are called qualities and are used for grouping and identifying the product. There are several pre-seeded qualities, and together with their pre-seeded quality values, these are used to classify contracts (see Seeded Contract Classification Parameters, page E-1). You can also create your own qualities and quality values. There is no processing functionality behind the user-defined qualities and quality values.

Business rules are grouped under options. The values set for each of the business rules are used by the processes during the life-cycle of the contract.

The rules and structuring of the contract determine its classification. The accounting norms define accounting for each classification. The accounting is defined under an accounting template set, which is associated with the product at the time you are setting up your products.

For example, operating leases are accounted for differently than direct finance leases. Therefore, it is highly likely that the deal type would be pre-set as an option for a product.

> **Note:** To facilitate workflow and logical product creation, you should map and define the various attributes, as well as the business rules to apply to each of the products you are creating. Decisions such as which attributes to define on the template level, which to define on the product level, and which options to make editable at the contract level should be made prior to implementation.

It is possible for you to override some of the option values, which default from the product while authoring the contract.

You can also associate stream types to a financial product, which you can also set to accrue (Accrual Rules). For more information on stream types, see Define Streams and Pricing.

There is no limit to the amount of financial products that you can configure for your enterprise. For more information on lease authoring, see theOracle Lease Management *User Guide*.

Definitions

Quality: Qualities defined on a product cannot be modified on the contract. These are used for grouping and identification and, except for the pre-seeded qualities and

quality values, have no processing functionality associated with them. You can define as many qualities as you need for your enterprise. You can separately define qualities for templates and products.

Option: Business rules applicable to the product are defined as options. These are drawn from a finite set of seeded rules within Oracle Lease Management. The option values can be fixed, entered, or selected from a list by the user at the time of authoring the contract. It is possible for the user to modify some product option values during authoring, if its corresponding option is editable when associated with a product.

Value: The result set that you can use for a quality or option. Options can be based on the valid values that are available for the business rule.

Procedural Steps for Defining a Product

The following points detail the general steps required to define a financial product that Oracle Lease Management uses during contract authoring.

- **Define Template Qualities and Values**: These are qualities and values that can be defined against a template. The quality values defined in the template cannot be modified on a product.

- **Define Qualities and Values**: These are qualities and values that can be defined against a product. The quality values can only be defined while setting up the product and cannot be defined against a template.

- **Define Options and Values**: These are the business rules and associated values you want available to add to your financial products. The values for an option can be defined at the time of setting up the product or you can enable editing of option values at the time of authoring the contract.

- **Define Product Template**: To facilitate the process of defining products, it is possible to setup product templates which can be used to set up multiple products. You must associate all template and product qualities with a template to use them to categorize a product.

- **Define Products**: Products are set up to facilitate the authoring of contracts and drive accounting. If all the business rules and their associated values are defined in the product, the user activity at the time of authoring is minimized.

Lessors who write large deals can require that the product be defined with few business rules as these can differ substantially between contracts. The accounting template set containing the accounting pairs for the entire life cycle of the lease are also associated to the product.

The following table provides the eight steps and the order in which you define a product:

Steps for Setting up Financial Products

Task	Required
Define Template Quality Names	Optional
Define Template Quality Values	Optional
Define Product Qualities	Optional
Define Product Quality Values	Optional
Define Option Names	Optional
Define Option Values	Optional
Set up Product Templates	Yes
Set up Product	Yes

Seeded Qualities and Quality Values

Each Oracle Lease Management contract must have a product, and each product must have a product template.

In order to classify contracts, first you must add one or more of the seeded qualities to a product template (see Seeded Contract Classification Parameters, page E-1).

Within a single product template, you can have the quality Investor, or the four qualities: Lease, Taxowner. Interest Calculation Basis, and Revenue Recognition Method.

Subsequently, when you create a product using the product template, you must assign one of the seeded quality values for each seeded quality in the associated product template.

Define Template Quality Name and Value

Optional

You must define Template Quality names first and then define and associate values with the names. Template qualities are used when you define product templates and the values associated with the template qualities are mandatory and become fixed at the time you define your product template.

The purpose of these qualities is to allow you to define a host of product templates that

share a common set of qualities. For example, if you have several products that originate out of specific geographical areas, such as USA and UK, you can define a template quality named "location" with two values of USA and UK. When you subsequently define product templates, you can define separate templates, one using the USA as the contract origination location and the other using the UK.

This is important because different accounting laws can apply to different contracts.

You can also use template qualities to group the types of items you offer according to categories. If your enterprise leases both heavy equipment and computer equipment, for example, set up a template quality called "asset category" with two values: "heavy equipment" and "office equipment."

> **Note:** Because they are not linked to any processing functionality, you can set up as many template qualities as you want.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Products > Template Qualities

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click the Create Template Quality button.

   The Create Template Quality page appears.

2. Enter the Name and Description of the template quality.

3. Set the Effective From and, optionally, set the Effective To dates for the quality.

4. Click Create to save your work.

5. After confirmation, click the Template Qualities link and choose the template quality you just created from the Results section.

   The Template Quality Details page appears.

6. Click the Template Quality Values button to assign the appropriate value(s) to the template quality.

This displays all values already associated with the quality, if any.

7. Click Create Template Quality Value to associate a value with the current quality.

8. Enter the Name and, optionally, the Description of the Template Quality Value.

9. Set the mandatory Effective From and, optionally, the Effective To dates.

10. Click Create to save your work.

You can add as many values as necessary. You can view all the quality values associated with the template value by clicking List of Template Quality Values.

It is important to remember that every template quality you configure must have at least one value associated with it. Also, the values of a template quality are assigned when setting up the product template and not when setting up a product. For more information, see Define a Product Template.

Define Qualities Name and Values

Optional

You can define Quality names and then define and associate values with the those quality names. These differ from the template qualities in that the valid values are determined at the time you define the product.

Whereas with template qualities you define some qualities for your product template--such as location, asset category, and so on--which are unchangeable at the time you define products, you can also define some qualities that allow the values to be set at the time the product itself is being defined.

Just as you defined "asset category" as a template quality -- meaning that either "heavy equipment" or "office equipment" is always a fixed pre-defined value prior to creating a product -- you can set up a "sub-asset category" quality at the product level so you could further define the type of heavy equipment or office equipment to be leased at the time you create the product. This is simply a further classification of the product.

If you set up a product quality called "sub-asset category," for example, you might create values such as trailer, tractor, copier, computer, or fax machine.

Product qualities must be associated to a product template, but the value of the product quality can not be chosen until you are creating the product.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Products > Qualities

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1.   From the Quality page, click Create Quality.

     The Create Quality page appears.

2.   Enter the Name and Description of the quality in the appropriate fields.

3.   Set the Effective From and, optionally, the Effective To dates for the quality.

4.   Click Create to save your work.

5.   After confirmation, click the Quality link and select the quality you just created from the Results section.

     The Quality Details page appears.

6.   Click Quality Values to create and assign the appropriate value(s) to the quality name you just defined.

     This Quality Values page appears and it displays all the values already associated with the quality, if any.

7.   Click Create Quality Value to create and associate a new value with the current quality.

8.   At the Create Quality Value page, enter the Name and optionally, the Description of the Quality Value.

9.   Set the mandatory Effective From and, optionally, the Effective To dates.

10. Click Create to save your work.

11. Repeat steps 5-10 to create as many quality values to associate with the quality you created.

Create as many qualities with associated values as you need to define your products.

Define Options and Option Values

Optional

The business rules that are available within Oracle Lease Management have been defined within the application. When creating options and option values you must

associate those rules to an option that you want to associate to an option value to the option itself. Subsequently, a specific rule from that group is associated to a specific option value, which you create for the option.

> **Note:** All rules for Oracle Lease Management are pre-seeded. See the appendix for a list of the seeded rules. For more information on rules and rule groups, see the *Oracle Contracts User Guide*.

An example of an applicable rule in Oracle Lease Management is the End of Term Options rule. The actual values of this rule are stored as a lookup and include a variety of end-of-term options, such as fair market value, fixed price, and dollar buyout. This value is set and associated with an option value you created, specific to the needs of your business.

Prerequisites

Enable Oracle Contracts

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Products > Options

Steps

To create an option with one option value, you must:

1. Create Option Name.

2. Associate Rules to the Option.

3. Create Option Values.

4. Associate Rules and Option Values.

5. Associate a Rule Value to the Option Value.

Create Option Name

To create an option name:

1. At the Option Rules page click the Create Option Rule button.

   The Create Option Rule page appears.

2. Enter the Name and Description of the option to create.

3. Enter the Effective From and, optionally, the Effective To dates.

4. Click Create to save your work.

Associate Rules to the Option

To associate rules to the option:

1. After receiving confirmation of your new option, click the Options link and click the name of the option you just created.

   The Option Details page appears.

2. Click Options Rules to associate the rules with the option.

3. When the Options Rules page appears, click Create Option Rule to associate a rule with the option.

   The Create Option Rule page appears.

4. Click the Search icon of the Rule field to find the appropriate rule to associate with the option.

   Once you select the rule, the Rule Group, Line Style, and Subclass fields automatically populate.

5. Optionally, enter some instructions.

6. Click Create to associate the rule with the option.

Create Option Values

To create option values:

1. Click the name of the option to show the Option Details page.

2. Click the Option Values button to enter the Option Values page.

3. To add a value, click Create Option Value.

   The Create Option Value page appears.

4. Define the value name for this option.

   Although the option value name can be any alphanumeric combination you want, they should make business sense. These value names appear when authoring a contract.

5. Add an optional description.

6. Add the Effective From date and, optionally, Effective To date.

7. Click Create to save your work.

   Create as many values as you require to associate with this particular option. For example, if you created an option called End of Term Purchase, you might want to create three values: fair market value, dollar buy out, and fixed percentage. You can create as many option values as you want.

Associate Rules and Option Values

To associate rules and option values:

1. Click List of Option Values to display the Option Values page, which displays all the values you have associated with the option.

2. Click the hypertext name of the value to associate with a rule.

   This action opens the Option Value Details page for the that particular option value.

3. Click the Options Value Rule button to associate a rule with the option value you just created

   The Option Value Rule page appears.

4. Click Create Options Value Rule to navigate to the Create Option Value Rule page.

   > **Note:** At the top of the page, are the name of the option and the name of the associated option value that you are working with. Both names are hypertext links and clicking either navigates you back to the related details page.

5. Click the search icon of the Rule field to display all the rules available to associate with this option value.

6. Choose a rule from the available list.

   Upon selection, the Rule Group, Line Style, and Subclass fields automatically populate.

7. For the Action and Intent fields, choose the following values:

   - **Action**: Copy

   - **Intent**: Sell

8. In the Context Organization field, optionally enter the operating unit.

9. In the Context Inventory Organization field, optionally enter an inventory organization.

10. In the Context Asset Book field, optionally enter a defined asset set of books.

11. In the Instructions field, optionally enter a brief description of the rule.

12. Click Create to save this option value/rule association.

Associate a Rule Value to the Option Value

To associate a rule value to the option value:

1. After confirmation, click the Rule Templates button to associate the option value to a valid value of the rule you just associated with the option value.

   The Option Value Rule Templates page appears. The name of the option, option value, and rule that are associated appear at the top of this page.

2. To add a valid value, click the Create Option Value Rule Template button.

   The Rule Editor page appears. This page is dynamic and includes the name of the option value rule you are associating the rule value with, as well as the set of available rule attributes. For each attribute (1 to 15 possible), you can choose the particular rule value to associate with that option value.

   > **Note:** During this step, you are assigning the values from an available set of values for each rule attribute, and associating this combination with the option value you created. When an option is then associated with a product, the rule value set of that option is defined.

3. Enter or choose the value for each attribute of the rule.

   Some rule attributes are mandatory and some optional. You must choose a value for all mandatory fields.

4. Click Create to save your work.

See Also

For more information on Rules and Rule Groups, see the *Oracle Contracts User Guide*.

Define a Product Template

Once you have defined your template and product qualities, along with your options, you must define product templates, which are required when defining a product.

Product templates can include template qualities and product qualities. The differences between template qualities and product qualities are:

- You define the value of a template quality in this step and you cannot change it when you define a product.

- You determine the value of the product quality at the time you set up your products.

> **Note:** To classify contracts that use products associated with the product template, you must add the seeded quality Investor to your product template or the four qualities of Lease, Taxowner, Interest Calculation Basis, and Revenue Recognition Method. For more information, see Seeded Contract Classification Parameters, page E-1.

Prerequisites

Define template and product qualities prior to setting up a product template.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Products > Product Templates

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click Create Product Template.

   The Create Product Template page appears.

2. Enter the Name and Description of the product template to create.

3. Set the Effective From and, optionally, Effective To dates for the template.

4. Click Create to save your work.

5. Click the Product Templates link and then click the name of the Product Template you just created.

   The Product Templates Details page appears.

6. Click the Template Qualities button to open the Product Template - Template Qualities page.

7. Click Add Template Quality to associate the appropriate template quality to the

product template.

This action lets you associate the appropriate template quality and value combination to a particular product template.

8. From the Add Template Quality page, in the Template Quality field, click the Search icon to display the list of available template qualities.

   Note that there is a separate template quality for each value that you associated with it. Choose the template quality based upon the value to be associated with the template.

9. Choose the item to add to the product template.

10. Click Add to complete the template quality association.

    Add as many template qualities as you want from the list. All the associated template qualities can be viewed by clicking List of Template Qualities. To delete one or more of these, click the box of the quality to remove and click Delete.

11. To add qualities to the product template (which enables the value of the quality to be determined at the time of product creation) click the name of the product template you created to open the Product Template Details page.

12. Click the Qualities button to open the Product Template - Qualities page.

13. Click Add Quality.

    The Add Qualities page appears.

14. In the Quality field, click the Search icon to display the list of available product qualities.

15. Choose the quality to associate with the template from the box.

16. Click Add to save your work

    Add as many product qualities as you want from the list. All the associated product qualities can be viewed by clicking List of Product Qualities. To delete one or more of these, click the box of the quality to remove and click Delete.

    When you define a product, you are required to enter a product template name.

Define a Product

After defining product templates, product qualities, and options, you can define your financial products. Financial products are required for all contracts. At the time of contract origination, you must select a product. The options and their defined values, which are associated with the product, populate the terms and conditions page during contract origination. You also can assign stream types to a product for accrual.

Additionally, you can define non-financial considerations such as location.

- You determine the value of the product quality at the time you set up your products.

    > **Note:** You must add a seeded quality value to the seeded quality or qualities in the product template associated with the product. For more information, see Seeded Contract Classification Parameters, page E-1.

Prerequisites

All product templates, qualities, and options you intend to use must be pre-defined.

You also must define your accounting template set prior to defining a product because you are required to select an accounting template set when you set up your products.

Responsibility

Lease Super User

Navigation

Setup > Products > Products

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. On the Products page, click Create Product.

   The Create Product page appears.

2. Complete these fields:

   - Name: Type the name of the financial product.

     You may want to search for and select the Product Template and Accounting Template Set first, then name this product similarly, as a subset of its parent categories.

   - Description (optional): Type a brief description of the product.

   - Product Template: Search the existing product templates and, from the list, choose the product template to associate with the product. (Only ONE product template can be associated with a product.)

   - Accounting Template Set: Search the existing accounting template sets and, from the list, choose the template set to associate with the product.

In this field, you determine what kind of accounting entries are needed for this product.

> **Important:** It is extremely important that all the possible accounting entries that might be used during the life of the contract be included in the accounting template set. For more information, see Define Accounting Template Sets.

- Reporting Product (required for multi-GAAP, optional otherwise): Set this to the product that describes the multi-GAAP reporting options, which is to be associated with the product that you are creating or editing. See Multi-GAAP Product Combinations, page F-1 for the list of valid local and reporting product combinations of book classifications.

- Effective From/Effective To: Set the valid dates for the life of the product. The Effective From date is mandatory, while the Effective To date is optional.

3. Click Create to save your work.

Quality Values

1. Click the Products link and select the Product you just created from the results list.

   The Update Product page appears.

2. To add quality values to the product, click the Quality Values button to display a list of all the product quality values associated with the product.

   You defined qualities at the time you configured your product templates. At this time you must associate a value with each associated quality.

3. Click the name of the product quality.

   The Quality Value Details page appears.

4. Click the Search icon to display the list of possible product quality values.

5. Choose the value to associate with the product quality.

6. Click Create to save your work.

Options

1. Click Options to display all options associated with the product.

   If this is a new product there are no associated options.

2. To associate options with the product, click Create.

3. In the Options field:

   1. Search for the option(s) to associate with the product.

   2. Choose an option from the list.

4. In the Required field, choose Yes or No.

   If you choose **Yes**, the values that you select for the Option are not editable when the lessor is authoring a contract. A **No** choice makes the value editable at the time of authoring.

5. Click Options Values to see all the values associated with the selected option.

   For example, you can have an option for the product for Buyout Purchase Options with possible values of **Fair Market Value** and **Dollar Buyout**. These two values appear on the list. If you would like to remove one of the option values, select the box and click Remove.

   In this example, if you leave both values, the user at the time of authoring can choose which option value to associate to the **Buyout Purchase** option of that particular contract.

   For more information on creating Options and option values, see Define Options and Option Values.

6. Click Add to save your work.

Add Accrual Streams

- This page lists the stream types that you have already associated with the product for accrual. The table shows the hypertext-linked stream type name, and whether the stream type is set to accrue.

  > **Note:** If you chose the Depreciation stream type, you should *not* mark it for accrual while defining a product because **Oracle Assets,** not Oracle Lease Management, creates the depreciation accounting entries.

Update Accrual Streams

For Lease financial products, after streams have been set to accrue, you can subsequently change the accrual.

1. To change the accrual rules flag for a stream type, go to Setup > Products > Products. On the Product page, search for and select the financial product. On the Update Product page that appears, click Accrual Streams.

   The Accrual Streams page appears, listing each stream and whether it is set to

Accrue.

2. Click the name of a stream for which you want to change the accrual flag.

    The Accrual Stream Details page appears, displaying a selection box labeled Accrue, for setting the accrual flag. Available values are Yes, accrue, or No, do not accrue. Then click Update.

    After you receive a successful update confirmation, you may choose List of Accrual Streams. The stream that you changed now displays the updated accrual flag (Yes or No) in the Accrue field.

3. Repeat the steps for each stream type accrual flag setting you want to change.

Validate Product Changes

You can validate changes made to a financial product by selecting Validate Product. Lease Management generates a validation report on the following parameters:

1. That book classification of the stream template and the product match.

2. Accounting template has defined all accrual streams on a product.

3. If an accounting template has been defined for a primary stream purpose, the template has also been defined for a dependent stream purpose

4. All streams on the stream generation template with the attribute Billing have an accounting template with a transaction type of Billing and Credit Memo.

Define Invoice Group Parameters

The following topics describe how to setup an Oracle Lease Management invoice group and its objects:

- Create an Invoice Group

- Create an Invoice Type

- Create an Invoice Line Type

- Specify a Default Invoice Line Type

About Invoice Groups

An invoice group is a grouping of the parameters which determine exactly what appears on an Oracle Lease Management invoice. Every invoice in Oracle Lease Management uses a particular invoice group, which impacts the invoice's appearance.

Each invoice group consists of one or more invoice types. Each invoice type consists of one or more invoice line types. Within each invoice line type, you can associate one or more billing types.

After creating an invoice group, with its component invoice types and invoice line types, you must update the invoice group to define a default invoice line type for billing types that are not specifically assigned to an invoice line type.

About Modifying Invoice Features

Invoice features that you can modify include:

- Specifying which billing types to include in an invoice.

- Specifying which billing types to include within a line; this feature enables combining of billing types.

- Specifying which order the billing types are to appear on the invoice.

- Consolidating multiple contracts for a customer into one invoice or providing separate invoices for each contract.

- Combining all assets into one line or making each asset appear on separate lines.

About Creating and Adding Invoice Objects

Each Create page lets you create one object at each level. Starting from the Create Invoice Group page, as you complete and submit the parameters on each page, you proceed automatically to the Create page at the next level down.

This fast-track approach lets you create one invoice group, consisting of one invoice type and one invoice line type.

To add extra objects after a fast-track creation, you must navigate to the appropriate level of your invoice group, and use one of the following areas.

- **Update Invoice Group**: Before you update an invoice group, you must search for the invoice group, then click the Update Invoice Group button.

- **Update Invoice Type**: Before you update an invoice type, you must search for the invoice group, then the invoice type, then click the Update Invoice Type button.

- **Update Invoice Line Type**: Before you update an invoice line type, you must search for the invoice group, then the invoice type, then the invoice line type, then click the Update Invoice Line Type button.

About Updating Invoice Groups and Objects

The top of each Update page consists of the same fields as its corresponding Create

page. If you have to use any Update page to add to your invoice group, type or line type, you can refer to the steps in the corresponding Create page. The main difference is that you complete each Update page processing by clicking the Update button, rather than a Create button.

The sections that follow describe the steps for the Create pages only.

Create an Invoice Group

Required

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Receivables > Invoice Groups

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Invoice Group page, click the Create Invoice Group button.

   The Create Invoice Group page appears.

2. Enter the Name, and optionally, the Description.

3. Use the Multi-Contract Invoices box to determine either:

   • To have one contract per invoice.

   • To have a multiple contracts per invoice.

     To combine contracts on an invoice, check the Multi-Contract Invoices box, otherwise leave it blank.

4. Optionally, enter the Start Date and End Date for this invoice group.

5. Click Create.

Create an Invoice Type

Required

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Receivables > Invoice Groups

After the confirmation message on the Create Invoice Group page appears, the Create Invoice Type page appears.

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Create Invoice Type page, enter the Name and optional Description.

2. Check the Provide Contract Detail box to specify the contract number on the invoice line, otherwise leave it blank. The effect of leaving this box blank is to combine the same billing type from multiple contracts into one invoice line.

   For example, *without* contract detail, rents for contracts 001,002 and 003 are grouped together and displayed as one rent amount.

3. Check the Combine Assets box to combine the same billing type per contract into one invoice line, otherwise leave it blank.

   For example, if contract 001 has two assets, both of billing type Rent, checking the Combine Assets box results in one invoice line for contract 001 with billing type Rent.

   > **Note:** If you combine contracts into a single line for every billing type, then you must group all assets together. In other words, if you have not selected the Provide Contract Detail box, then you must select the Combine Assets box.

The following table shows allowable box combinations for Provide Contract Detail and Combine Assets.

Allowable Combinations of Selections

Provide Contract Detail	Combine Assets
Unchecked	Checked
Checked	Checked
Unchecked	Unchecked

1. Click the Create button.

Create an Invoice Line Type

Required

After the confirmation message on the Create Invoice Type page, the Create Invoice Line Type page appears.

The Invoice Line Type page is where you:

- Sequence the invoice lines.

- Provide a line name.

As you enter invoice line type details, you also:

- Associate streams to invoice lines.

- Optionally combine different billing type amounts into one invoice line--for example, bundling Rent and Service Tax into a single line called Rent.

Prerequisites

To associate your own billing types to invoice lines, you must have created billable streams: streams with the attribute Billable set to **Y**. For more information, see Set Up Stream Types.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

If you are using the fast-track method of creating an invoice group, you arrive at this page automatically after you create the invoice type.

If you are *updating* an invoice type, in the Update Invoice Type page, then you must click the Create Line Type button.

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Create Invoice Line Type page, enter a Sequence Number for the invoice line.

2. Enter a Line Name for the line.

   The line name appears on the invoice and identify the invoice line.

3. Click the Create button.

4. The Streams panel appears, where you associate one or more billing type streams to an invoice line.

   For example, you could create an invoice line with the line name Lease Payment, and associate it with the two billing type streams Rent and Service & Maintenance.

5. For each stream that you want associate to an invoice line, click Go beside the next empty Stream Name entry, and select your billing type stream from the list that appears.

6. If you have to associate more than one billing type per invoice line, click the button to **Add Another Row**, and repeat step 4.

7. If required, repeat step 5 until there are no more billing type streams to associate with the invoice line.

8. Click Submit.

Specify a Default Invoice Line Type

Required

Each invoice group must have an default invoice line type for the billing types not specifically assigned to an invoice line type.

You cannot specify the default invoice line type for an invoice group as you are creating the invoice group. You must first create the invoice group, together with its constituent invoice types and invoice line types - only after you have created the complete invoice group can you specify which invoice line type should be the default for the invoice group.

Prerequisites

You must have created an invoice group, with at least one invoice type and invoice line type.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Receivables > Invoice Groups

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. On the Invoice Group page, search for the invoice group to specify a default invoice line type.

2. In the Results area, click the hypertext-linked Name of your selected invoice group.

   The Update Invoice Group page appears.

3. Select the Default Line Type.

4. Click Update.

Set Up Interest Rates

Required

Oracle Lease Management supports various kinds of interest calculations for lease contracts, such as those for disbursements made prior to contract activation, or loan contracts.

You can define your own interest rates, which you can then use in many Oracle Lease Management transactions.

The parameters for the interest rate are:

• An interest rate name.

• A category, such as Daily, Weekly, Monthly.

• A percentage rate.

• The effective date of the interest rate.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Receivables > Interest Rates

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. On the Interest Rates page, click the Create Interest Rate button.

2. Enter the Interest Rate Name.

3. Choose the Index Frequency (daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, yearly, and so on).

4. Optionally, enter a description.

5. Click the Create Button.

6. On the left-side navigation bar, click the Interest Rates link.

7. In the Results area, click the name of the Interest Rate that you just created.

8. Click the Interest Rate Values button.

   The Interest Rate Values page appears.

9. Click the Add Another Row button.

10. In the Effective From and the Effective To fields, click the respective Calendar icons, and specify the effective dates.

    You can optionally leave the Effective To field blank if you do not want an ending effective date.

11. In the Percentage field, enter the rate.

12. Click Update.

Define Late Charges Parameters

Required

These topics describe the setup of Oracle Lease Management late charge parameters:

- Create Late Policies

- Create Late Interest Policy

- Create Late Charge Policy

About Late Charge Parameters

When a lessee or borrower does not pay an invoice on or prior to the due date, Oracle Lease Management can assess a penalty. There are two ways to calculate the penalty. The first is a one-time fee charged after a grace period, and the second is an interest charge on the payment. You can choose to use one or the other, or both.

After Oracle Lease Management assesses the late charge or late interest charge, it sends the amount to Oracle Receivables, which then sends an invoice to the lessee/borrower.

The setup process uses these terms:

Late Charge Policy: Grouping of terms and conditions for late charges and late interest charges.

Late Charge: One-time fee assessed to a lessee/borrow for not paying an invoice. This can be a flat-fee or a percentage of total open invoices past due.

Late Interest Charge: An interest charge on a late payment.

Adder: The amount charged over the index rate. For example, if the index rate is prime, and you are charging prime plus 1%, then 1% is the adder.

Interest Type: This is either Fixed or Variable.

Create Late Policies

Required

You can create a late interest policy, a late charge policy, or a late interest and late charge policy. These sections outline the steps:

- Create Late Interest Policy

- Create Late Charge Policy

Prerequisites

Your interest rates must be set up. See Set up Interest Rates.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Billing > Late Policies

Create Late Interest Policy

Required

Late interest is calculated for past due invoices when the payment is received. This rule assesses late interest to the payment that can be either fixed or variable.

Late interest computation uses this formula:

```
Late interest = ((Invoice Amount * Rate)/Number of days in the year)*
Days Late
```

Where:

```
Days Late = Date Invoice Paid - Due Date of the Invoice
```

Or

```
Days Late = Date Item Paid - (Due Date of Invoice + Grace Period)
```

If the late interest is less than the minimum late interest, no interest is assessed. If the late interest is more than the maximum, then the maximum amount is used.

Interest is assessed using the "rate type" associated with the policy. If the rate type is fixed, use the defined rate. If the rate is variable, use the index code associated with the late charge product to look up the rates from the rate table. The rate is then equal to the rate from the index plus an adder.

The following steps describe how to set up late interest rules by defining the parameters on the setup pages.

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click the Create button.

2. In the Create Late Policy page, enter the Name.

   For example, Germany_lease.

3. Choose the Location from the list of values.

   For example, Germany. (This could be a state or a country.)

4. Enter the Description.

   For example, Late Charges.

5. Select a Late Policy Type from the list.

   Choices include Late Charge, Late Interest, and Late Charge and Late Interest.

If you choose Late Charge, then complete only that section. If you choose Late Interest, then complete only that section. If you choose both, complete both sections.

6. In the Late Interest section, enter the Maximum Interest.

   This is the maximum amount assessed as a late interest charge.

7. Enter the Minimum Interest.

   This is the minimum amount assessed as a late interest charge.

8. Select the Rate Type from the list.

   Choices include Fixed Rate or Variable Rate. If you selected Fixed Rate, then enter the Late Interest Rate (%). For example, 11%.

   If you selected Variable Rate, then select the Index Code from a list of values (these are the Interest Rates you set up earlier). Then enter an Adder Rate, for example, 1.0.

9. Enter the Grace Period. For example, 10 days.

10. Enter the Minimum Balance. For example, $10.

11. Click the Create button.

12. A page displaying the list of Exempt Billing Types appears. Select any Exempt Billing Types.

13. Click Submit.

Create Late Charge Policy

Required

Late charges can be a flat fee or a percentage of the total invoices past due. For a contract, if the late charge is a flat fee, no computation is needed. If, however, the late charge is a percentage of the total due, then you must compute the charge. Compare the computed charge with the minimum and maximum charge. If it is less than minimum, use the minimum, or if it is more than the maximum, use the maximum.

These steps describe how to set up late charge rules and define the parameters on the setup pages.

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Late Charges section, select the Late Charge Type.

   Choices include Fixed Amount or Percentage.

2. If you choose percentage, enter the Late Charge Rate (%).

   For example, 10%.

3. If you choose fixed, enter the Late Charge Amount.

   For example, $25.

4. Enter the Grace Period.

   The Grace Period is the period during which a late charge is not assessed. For example, 10 days.

5. Enter the Maximum Late Charge.

   This is the maximum amount that can be assessed as a late charge.

6. Enter the Minimum Late Charge.

   This is the minimum amount that can be assessed as a late charge.

7. Enter the Minimum Balance.

   If the amount due is less than the minimum amount, no late charge is assessed.

8. Click the Create Late Policy button.

9. A page displaying the list of Exempt Billing Types appears. Select any Exempt Billing Types.

10. Click Submit.

    > **Note:** To create both late interest and late charge policies, select that option in the Late Policy Type field, fill in the information appropriate to each section, then click the Create button. Continue with the preceding steps.

Define Cash Search and Cash Application Rules

These implementation topics describe the setup of Oracle Lease Management cash search and application rules:

• Define Invoice Search Rules

• Define Cash Application Rules

About Cash Search and Application Rules

Oracle Lease Management includes an automated means of applying receipts to

invoices. To use automated application of receipts, you must define rules to handle situations where there are:

- Receipts that you cannot automatically identify against a contract or invoice. In this situation, you define rules to attempt to find a matching invoice.

- Receipts that you can identify against an invoice, but the amount is different from the invoice. In this situation, you must define rules on how to apply cash receipts for these types:

    - **Receipt mismatches**: You can match the receipt against an customer ID, but you cannot match the receipt against an invoice.

    - **Overpayments**: You have matched the receipt against an invoice but the amount exceeds the billed amount.

    - **Underpayments**: You have identified the receipt against an invoice but the amount is less than the billed amount.

- Differences in the amount received versus the invoice amount. You indicate the amount of tolerance—expressed as a percentage—against which you apply a cash recipient against an invoice.

- Cash receipts for termination quotes. You specify the number of days beyond the termination quote date to apply cash receipts.

The two main parts of defining rules for handling cash receipts are to:

- Define Invoice Search Rules

- Define Cash Application Rules

Define Invoice Search Rules

Required

Search rules for invoices apply to lockbox processing and manual receipt of payments to help you automate the matching of receipts with invoices. For example, search rules can help you handle receipts that you cannot automatically apply to invoices, customers, or contracts.

In addition to search rules, cash rules help you apply a cash receipt to a customer's account or outstanding invoices. For more information, see Define Cash Application Rules.

Search rules for invoices in Oracle Lease Management comprise mainly of user-defined rules. Search rules make use of billing types that you can combine to form addition or subtraction statements—also known as **combinations**. Billing types are the same as stream types. Examples of billing types include: rent, tax, insurance, late charges, bank

fees. Oracle Lease Management includes many seeded billing types from which you can define search rules. You can also define your own billing types and include them in your invoice search rules. For more information, see Define Streams and Pricing.

To define your own rules, include one or more billing types to form a combination. When including multiple billing types to form a combination, you are adding or subtracting billing type values to attempt to find possible matching values with a receipt. For example, rent and late charges are two examples of billing types that you can combine to use in a rule. Upon execution of that rule's combinations, the resulting value might match or explain why a cash receipt is different from the original invoiced amount which might not have included the late charges. You can have multiple search rules and you can prioritize the sequence in which each rule is evaluated.

Prerequisites

Set up your custom billing types, if any.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Receivables > Search Rules

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. On the Search Rules page, click the Create Search Rule button.

2. On the Search Rule page, complete the Name and Description fields.

3. In the Search Type field, choose either:

    • **Billing Type Combination**: Use only stream types in the statement.

    • **Total Minus Combination**: Use the total invoice amount less the combination of billing types.

4. In the Sequence field, enter the priority number in which this rule applies.

5. Click the Create button.

    After a confirmation, the Create Combination page opens and shows you the name of your new search rule, the search type, and the sequence.

6. In the Plus/Minus column in the first row, choose either Plus or Minus to add or subtract the stream type that you specify in the following step.

7. In the Stream Type column on the first row:

    1. Click the Search icon.

    2. Search for and select a stream type.

    3. Click OK.

       The selected stream type appears in the Stream Type column.

8. To add or subtract additional stream types for this rule, click the Add Another Row button and repeat steps 6-7 on the additional rows.

9. Click the Create button.

Guidelines

Before creating search rules, verify that you have set up any custom stream types to include in your rules.

See Also

Define Streams and Pricing

Edit Search Rules

Optional

You can change your invoice search rules from time to time. For example, you might have added some new billing types to accommodate different or new taxes, fees, or insurance. You can locate rules by specifying either the rule name or the search type.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Receipts > Search Rules

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. On the Search Rule page, perform a search to locate the rule to edit by doing either:

- In the Name field, enter full or partial search criteria and click the flashlight icon.

- In the Search Type field, choose either Billing Type Combination or Total Minus Combination.

  Billing Type Combination displays rules that use only billing types in the statement.

  Total Minus Combination displays rules that use the total Invoice amount less the combination of billing types.

2. Click Go.

   In the Results area, matching rules appear.

3. To edit a rule, click the rule name in the Name column.

   The Update Search Rule page appears.

4. To remove a billing type from your combination:

   1. In the Remove column, select the box next to the billing type.

   2. Click Submit.

5. To change the addition or subtraction of a billing type value, choose either Plus or Minus in the Plus/Minus column.

6. To add a billing type combinations that follow the existing rule's combination:

   1. Click the Create Combinations button.

      The Create Combination page opens.

   2. In the first row of the Plus/Minus column, choose either Plus or Minus to add or subtract the billing type that you specify in the following step.

   3. On the first row in the Billing type column, click the Search icon.

   4. Search for and select a billing type.

   5. Click OK.

      The selected billing type appears in the Billing Type column.

   6. To add or subtract additional billing types for this rule, repeat steps b through e on the additional rows.

   7. Click the Create button.

The additional billing type combinations appear after the existing ones.

Define Cash Application Rules

Required

The topics in the Define Cash Application Rules section include:

- Define Main Cash Application Rule Components

- Define Billing Type Payment Order for Underpayments

- Define Streams to Prorate for Underpayments

Cash application rules define how to apply a receipt to an invoice where:

- You know who the customer is but you have not identified specific invoices or billing types.

- You have identified a specific invoice, but the receipt amount is greater than or less than the invoice amount.

Use cash application rules to apply cash receipts in the following situations:

- **Receipt Mismatch**: decide whether to apply cash receipt to the customers account, oldest invoices, or newest invoices.

- **Underpayments**: decide whether to apply cash receipt based on transaction type, prorate to each line of invoice, or move to unapplied.

- **Overpayments**: decide whether to apply cash to unapplied, to on account (customer's balance), or to future amounts due.

- **Tolerances**: specify by a percentage of the invoice amount the difference between a cash receipt and the invoice amount that you accept as an automatic application of the cash receipt.

- **Termination Quotes**: specify the number of days past the deadline of the quoted termination date during which you still accept cash receipts.

About Cash Application Terms in Receivables

Various terms refer to the flow of cash receipts in Receivables. These terms include:

- **Unidentified**: A cash receipt for which you do not know who the customer is.

- **Unapplied**: A cash receipt for which you do know who the customer is but you have not run the cash application process. For example, the cash receipt has not been applied to any invoices or On Account. In any case, this type of cash receipt is

associated with the customer.

- **On Account**: A cash receipt for which you do know who the customer is and you apply it to their balance but you are not applying it against any invoices. This type of cash receipt is associated with the customer.

- **Applied**: A cash receipt for which you do know who the customer is and you apply it against any invoices. This type of cash receipt is associated with the customer.

Setting Up Cash Application Rules

You can set up cash application rules at either the organization or the contract level. During the implementation of Oracle Lease Management, the first cash application rule that you create becomes the default cash application rule. You can update but not delete this rule.

You can create as many cash application rules as you want. The objective in doing this is to be able to apply different cash application rules for different contracts.

When you author a contract, you can associate any cash application rule, even the default cash application rule, with the contract. If you do not explicitly associate a cash application rule with the contract, the default rule is implicitly associated with the contract.

Applying Cash Application Rules

For automatic inexact payments, cash application rules are always applied. When you create a manual receipt which does not match the invoice amount, you can choose to use the cash application rule or to override the rule and apply the cash manually.

In the description that follows, assume that all payments are automatic inexact payments. The same logic applies for manual receipts that do not match the invoice amount, where you do not override the cash application rules.

When cash application rules are applied, the way they are applied depends on the complexity of the invoice.

For the simple case of an invoice generated from a single contract, Oracle Lease Management applies either the default cash application rule (if no explicit cash application rule was specified for the contract) or the explicit cash application rule specified for the contract.

When a consolidated invoice is generated, which spans two or more contracts, the way that the cash application rules are applied depends both on the cash application rules and the contract start dates, as follows:

- Oracle Lease Management automatically groups stream types for contracts with a *common start date* and the *same cash application rule*, and applies the common cash application rule to the stream types. All contracts in the consolidated invoice must have the same start date and the same cash application rule.

- Oracle Lease Management automatically groups stream types for contracts with a *common start date* and *different cash application rules*, and applies the default cash application rule to the stream types for all the contracts.

- When there are two or more *different start dates* among the contracts, Oracle Lease Management applies the cash application rule for the oldest contract first, and then processes each successive contract in chronological order, applying its cash application rule.

Define Main Cash Application Rule Components

Required

> **Note:** The first cash application rule that you create becomes the default cash application rule. You can update but you cannot delete this rule.

Prerequisites

Set up streams.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Receivables > Cash Application Rules

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Cash Application Rules page:

   - If you want to create a cash application rule, click Create Cash Application Rule.

   - If you want to edit an existing cash application rule, then search for the rule using one or more of the following search parameters: Rule Name, a range of dates for the Start Date, a range of dates for the End Date.

   - In the Default Rule field, you may also specify that you want all rules (ALL), just the default rule (YES), or all rules except the default rule (NO).

   - Click Go.

   Rule Header

Whether you are creating or editing a cash application rule, the fields to define are almost identical, whether they appear on the Create Cash Application Rule page or the Update Cash Application Rule page.

1. In the Rule Details area, when you are creating a cash application rule, either select an existing rule for which you want to create a new version, or enter a New Rule Name.

   When you create a new version of an existing rule, the new version must not overlap in time with any other version, and its start date must not be before the current date.

2. Enter a Description for the rule.

3. Enter a Start Date for the rule.

4. Optionally, enter an End Date for the rule.

Receipt Mismatch Rules

Receipt mismatches occur when you identify the customer but cannot locate an invoice against which you can apply a payment.

1. Select one of the three choices for receipt mismatches:

   - **Move Receipt to On Account**

     Apply receipt to a customer without applying to any invoices.

   - **Apply to Oldest Invoices**

     Apply receipt to the customer's oldest outstanding invoices first.

   - **Apply to Newest Invoices**

     Apply receipt to the customer's newest outstanding invoices first.

Underpayment Rules

1. In the Cash Application Rules section, in the Underpayment area, select one of the three methods for applying underpayments against a customer's account:

   - **Apply based on billing type**

     Decide the sequence or priority in which to apply cash to billing types. You can specify sequence to one or more billing types. Cash receipts are fully applied to each billing type in the order you specify until the cash receipt is fully applied.

     > **Note:** If you choose **Apply based on billing type** as your underpayment rule, then, after you click Create or Update, the Payment Order page appears, and you must create or edit the

payment sequence of billing types.

> **Note:** For more information, see Define Billing Type Payment Order for Underpayments.

- **Prorate for specific lines on invoice**

  Decide which billing types to prorate.

  > **Note:** If you choose **Prorate for specific lines on invoice** as your underpayment rule, then, after you click Create or Update, the Prorate Transactions page appears, and you must specify the streams to prorate.

  > **Note:** For more information, see Define Streams to Prorate for Underpayments.

- **Move cash to unapplied**

  Do not apply receipt to invoice or on account; place receipt in unapplied.

Overpayment Rules

1. In the Cash Application Rules section, in the Overpayment area, select one of the three methods for applying overpayments:

   - **Apply to** customer balance

     Apply cash receipt to customer's on account balance rather than to an invoice.

   - **Apply to** future amounts due

     Treat overpaid amount as a prepayment.

   - **Move cash to** Unapplied

     Assign the cash receipt to the customer without applying it to an invoice or putting it on account. Use this option when you know who the customer is but you have not decided whether to apply it to an invoice or On Account.

2. Enter the number of months to bill ahead.

   This field is for billing future amounts due.

Tolerance Rule

When you define your cash application rules, you also must indicate how to handle

differences between the invoiced amount and the amount received. If this difference in amount is within the amount of **tolerance** that you specify, then the cash receipt applies to the invoice. The tolerance is expressed as a percentage of the invoice amount. The amount of tolerance that you specify applies to *all* cash receipts and invoices for all customers.

For example, suppose your invoice amount is $1000 and you set your tolerance percentage to 2 percent. This would mean you would accept a cash receipt that varies as much as 2 percent of $1000; that would include a range from $980 to $1020.

> **Note:** To apply cash receipts, the amount that you received must be within the tolerance.

1. In the Cash Application Rules section, in the Tolerances area, specify the **Percentage of tolerance allowed for amount**—the percentage of deviation from the agreed-upon termination price that you are willing to accept to terminate the contract.

Termination Quote Tolerance Rule

When you define your cash application rules, you also must indicate how to handle termination quotation tolerances. When a lease terminates for the balance due, you would typically agree upon a final balance due and a deadline. In the event that the final payment or date varies from the agreement, you can indicate the number of days past the **deadline** or **Quote Valid Date** during which you accept the final agreed-upon amount. This rule applies only to termination quotes.

For example, if you set the number of days past the deadline to 5, you accept payment past the deadline date for 5 days.

1. In the Cash Application Rules section, in the Tolerances area, specify the **Allowable days past the termination quote date**—the number of days past the agreed-upon deadline date for which you accept cash receipts.

2. Click Create or Update.

Define Billing Type Payment Order for Underpayments

During the creation or updating of a cash application rule, if **your Underpayment rule is Apply based on billing type**, then, after you click Create or Update, the Payment Order page opens and shows a grid with stream names and fields to enable you to enter a sequence number next to each stream name.

1. Enter values as follows:

    1. Next to each stream name in the Sequence Number column, enter the priority or sequence in which to apply underpayments.

       The smaller the sequence number is a higher priority; 1 is the highest priority,

for example.

2. Leave the Sequence Number field blank next to those stream names to which you do not want to apply receipts.

3. If you have multiple pages of stream names, then navigate to each page by clicking the Next and Last links.

4. Click Update.

Define Streams to Prorate for Underpayments

During the creation or updating of a cash application rule, if **your Underpayment rule is Prorate** for **specific lines on invoice**, then, after you click Create or Update, the Prorate Transactions page opens and shows a grid with stream names and fields to enable you to prorate each stream name.

1. Enter values as follows:

    1. Next to each stream name in the Prorate column, select whether to prorate the stream in underpayments.

    2. Leave the Prorate box empty next to those stream names for which you do not want to prorate receipts.

    3. If you have multiple pages of stream names, then navigate to each page by clicking the Next and Last links.

    4. Click Submit.

Define Customer Service Setups

These implementation tasks affect the setup of Oracle Lease Management customer service rules:

- Define Fulfillment Mapping

- Define Service Fees

Define Fulfillment Mapping

Required

To send customers automated fulfillment requests from different touch points within Oracle Lease Management, you must first map the master documents, which contain the pertinent information to send the customer, to the appropriate process within Oracle Lease Management.

Typically, customer service and collections agents perform activities that can call for a fulfillment request. For example, a customer can inquire about a particular invoice or want to make an asset exchange. Because these are two separate processes within Oracle Lease Management, to send out an appropriate response, you must map the specific process to the appropriate master document in Oracle CRM Foundation.

Oracle provides a set of lease-specific fulfillment templates, which were uploaded to the fulfillment server, and serve as the master documents. The Oracle Lease Management processes are pre-seeded. Use the following steps to map master documents to Oracle Lease Management processes.

For more information on fulfillment, see the *Oracle CRM Application Foundation User Guide*.

Prerequisites

You must upload fulfillment templates, in the form of HTML files, into Oracle CRM Foundation, Fulfillment.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Operations Manager, Collection Manager

Navigation

Setup > System Options > Process Templates

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. From the Process Templates page, click Create Process Template.

    The Create Process Template page opens.

2. In the Process field, choose the process to map from the available list of values.

    This list includes values such as Billing Transaction Inquiry, Billing Transaction Payment Inquiry, and Contract Asset Inquiry.

3. In the template field, choose the template to map to the process from the available list of values.

    This list is seeded and drawn from Oracle Foundation Fulfillment Server.

4. In the Email Subject field you can optionally enter the description.

    This title should reflect the nature of the fulfillment request. For example, if a copy of an invoice was sent out to a customer, you might want a generic email subject line of Lease Invoice Request.

5. Enter the Effective From and, optionally, the Effective To dates.

6. Click Create.

Guidelines

Note the following guidelines:

- Once you have mapped a process, you cannot be delete it. If you no longer want to use that particular mapping, you must make the mapping expire by setting the End Date to a real date that expires the mapping. You can set the expiration date on the Update Process Template page. You can also modify the Email Subject field from this page.

- From the Process Templates page, you can display all the mapped processes by clicking Go. To narrow the scope, you can choose either a Process or a Template from the list of lookups, then clicking Go displays all the processes or templates mapped specifically to the process or template you chose.

Define Service Fees

Optional

In the process of servicing contracts in Oracle Lease Management, a multitude of events can occur between the customer service representative and the lessee. Oracle Lease Management enables you the ability to charge service fees for these events, in accordance with your business rules.

These event types are seeded in Oracle Lease Management as service fee types and, during implementation, you can choose to enable any or all of these fees. For example, you might want to charge a fee for events such as a transfer of fees, invoice content change fees, audit letter request, and so on. To charge a fee for events, you must define your charges, the effective dates, and so on.

> **Note:** In Oracle Lease Management, all available service fee types are seeded.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Billing > Service Fees

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. From the Service Fees page, click Create Service Fee.

   The Create Service Fee page opens.

   > **Note:** All the service fees you have created, along with the pertinent details, appear on the Service Fees page.

2. From the list of values, choose the Name of the service fee to enable.

   This seeded list includes values such as Service Fee, Document Request Fee, and Restructure Request Fee.

3. Add a description of the service fee.

   This is optional, but serves to further identify the service for which you are charging a fee.

4. Enter the amount to charge for the service.

5. Enter the Effective From date and, optionally, enter the Effective To date.

6. Click Create.

Guidelines

You can filter your search for already created service fees by selecting either Active or All in the View field and clicking the Search icon. Selecting Active relegates your search to only those service fees containing Effective To dates that have not expired.

Define Party Contact Roles

Required

Vendor program agreements make use of party contact roles. You must define all party contact roles your company uses for vendor organizations since there are no seeded party contract roles. The party contact roles that you define become available on the list of values on the Create Party Contact page in the vendor agreements area of Oracle Lease Management.

Examples of party contact roles include: Billing Contact, Lease Vendor, Contract Administrator, Contract Manager, Contract Officer, Credit Analyst, Customer Contact, Customer Service Representative, Dealer, Inspector, License Sales Representative, Salesperson, Shipping, and Signatory.

To set up new user-defined parties, see Set Up New User-Defined Parties For Lease

Contracts and Agreements, page 5-3.

Responsibility

System Administrator

Navigation

Oracle Applications (Forms)

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Log on as system administrator.

2. Select the Contracts Manager role.

3. Navigate to Setup > Contract > Categories and Sources and select Define Role Sources.

4. Click the right arrow icon, and click the Open button.

5. On the Party Sources form, perform a query on Lease Vendor.

6. Click the Contact Sources tab.

7. Specify the Contact Role, Source, Constrained, Intent, Start Date, End Date, and Access Level.

8. Click the Save icon.

Define Remarketing Functionality

When setting up your remarketer functionality in Oracle Lease Management, you must do the following:

•   Create Remarketer Assignments

•   Define Repair Costs

Create Remarketer Assignments

Required

When the asset comes off-lease, it is recorded in the Asset Return Process. Within this process, the system assigns a Remarketer to the asset. This person is eventually

responsible for the disposal of the asset. When setting up Oracle Lease Management, ensure that the remarketer is set up in Oracle Human Resources and has been associated with a remarketing team in Oracle Foundation, as you won't see the remarketer's name in the list of values until that time.

Prerequisites

Define item catalogs in Oracle Inventory. For more information, see *Oracle Inventory User's Guide.*

Define your remarketer information in Oracle Foundation. For more information, see *Oracle Foundation User Guide*.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Operations Manage, Asset Manager

Navigation

Setup > Assets > Remarketer Assignments

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Remarketer Assignments page, click the Create Assignment button.

2. In the Create Remarketer Assignment page, choose a Remarketer from the list of values.

3. Choose an Item Category to associate with the remarketer from the list of values.

4. Choose the Effective From and, optionally, the Effective To dates.

   This is the period of time during which the remarketer is responsible for this item category.

5. Click Create to save your work

Define Repair Costs

Required

To choose the repairs and associated estimated costs for your assets, you must:

• Enter the repairs and costs into Oracle Lease Management.

• Perform the setup for repairs and costs separately for each operating unit.

After the information is in the table, you can use it during the asset disposition process.

You can update this table.

> **Note:** Repair costs are defined in the functional currency of the set of books.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Operations Manager, Asset Manager

Navigation

Setup > Assets > Repair Costs

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Repair Costs page, enter the Repair Type. For example, "Windshield Replacement."

2. Enter the Description. For example, "Replace broken windshield."

3. Enter the cost associated with the repair. For example, $325.00.

4. Click Update to store the information in Oracle Lease Management.

5. Click Remove to remove the line.

6. To add additional repair costs, click the Add 3 Rows button and repeat steps 1–4.

Define Lease Income Accrual Rules

By default, every active contract accrues income and expenses throughout its life. As part of the Oracle Lease Management setup process, you must define the rules around which the accrual of income and expenses against a contract is placed on hold.

The rule parameters are:

*   **Limit days**: The number of days an invoice is overdue.

*   **Bills unpaid**: Number of bills that are unpaid.

You can use one or both when setting up your parameters.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Accounting > Accrual Rules

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Enter your accrual rule by choosing the following from the lists:

    • **Logical Operator** (and, or)

    If you use "and," accrual stops when both conditions are met.

    If you use "or," accrual stops when either of the conditions are met.

    • **Left Parenthesis**

    Use the parenthesis to set up the rule as a formula.

    • **Operand**

    Limit Days: Accrual stops after a specified number of days elapses past the payment due date. For example, you can set up the rule to stop accrual for an outstanding bill of 90 days.

    Bills Unpaid: Accrual stops after a specified number of bills are left unpaid. For example, you can set up the rule to stop accrual after five bills are unpaid.

    • **Operator**

    Use the operators to define the formula (>, <, =, >=, <=).

    • **Literal**

    Specify the limit of days or the number of bills outstanding that the system should accept before stopping accrual, for example, 90 days or five billing periods.

    • **Right Parenthesis**

    Use the parenthesis to set up the rule as a formula.

- **Effective From** date

   Specify a date from which the accrual rule is effective.

2. Click the Add button.

Define Loss Provision Rules

Loss provisions let you apply estimated or tentative losses against contracts.

Loss provisions make use of aging buckets, which you should have set up in Oracle Receivables. You must set loss provision rates, which associate aging buckets with loss provision amounts.

For information on creating loss provisions and applying loss provisions to products, see the *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*.

Set up Loss Provision Rates

Required

Loss provision rates are the percentages that you associate with aging buckets to calculate loss provision amounts.

Prerequisites

Set up Loss Provision aging buckets. See Define Aging Buckets, page 4-41.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Accounting > Loss Rates

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Search for and select the aging bucket with which to associate a set of loss provision rates.

2. On each bucket line, enter a value in the Loss Rate column.

   Note: Enter the percentage as a whole number: Enter **5** for five percent. You can enter any number decimal places.

3. Click Update.

Define Off-Lease Asset Amortization Rules

When an asset comes off-lease and is retained, the remaining book value continues to be written off in the corporate books as per business rules. In some instances, a holding period could be associated with certain categories of assets. These holding periods are the periods used to determine when to stop and then restart the depreciation process of an asset. Depreciation can be deferred based on business rules. If the holding period is not defined for an asset, depreciation continues as it had prior to coming off lease.

Define Off-Lease Asset Hold Periods

Required

In Oracle Lease Management, you must define the hold period days for your off-lease assets.

Prerequisites

Define asset key flexfield.

Define asset category flexfield.

Define asset categories.

For more information, refer to the *Oracle Assets User Guide*.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Assets > Off-Lease Amortization Hold Periods

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. On the Off-Lease Amortization Hold Periods page for the initial setup, click the Load Asset Combinations button to view all of the asset category/asset book combinations as entered into Oracle Assets. This populates the Oracle Lease Management page with all of the categories currently set up in Oracle Assets with a book classification of **corporate**.

2. Check the Remove box to delete any unwanted asset combinations. They are removed from Oracle Lease Management only, not from Oracle Assets.

3. In the Hold Period Days field, enter the number of days to defer depreciation for the asset category/asset book combination.

4. Select the Depreciation Method from the list of values.

5. Click Update to save your changes.

Guidelines

If you have to make additional entries into your off-lease asset hold periods after you have entered all the hold and depreciate methods information, click the Create button. This lets you add individual records to the table without affecting the entries you have already defined. See the following section for details.

Do not click Load Asset Combinations again, unless you want to import all the combinations again from Fixed Assets, which overwrites the information you have already input.

Note that you must update the asset category description for the asset category that appears on the Off-Lease Asset Hold Periods page. For more information, see Define Off-Lease Asset Hold Periods, page 4-41.

Create Asset Category/Asset Book Combinations

You can create your own asset combinations within Oracle Lease Management.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Accounts Controller

Navigation

Setup > Assets > Off-Lease Amortization Hold Periods

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. At the top of the Off-Lease Asset Hold Periods page, click the Create button.

2. In the Create Off-Lease Asset Hold Period page, choose an Asset Category from the list of values.

3. Select the Asset Book from the list of values.

4. To override the Depreciation Method for the hold period, choose an alternative method from the list of values.

5. Enter the number of Hold Period Days.

6. Click Create to add the Combination to Oracle Lease Management.

   The combination is now set up in Oracle Lease Management, allowing you to define a hold period or depreciation method within Oracle Lease Management.

Set Up Subsidies

Before subsides can be used in contract authoring or lease quoting, they must be created and defined. The following procedures show how to set up a subsidy.

- Create Subsidy

- Define Subsidy Criteria

For more information on subsidies, see Subsidies, *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*.

Create Subsidy

Navigation

Marketing > Pricing Programs > Subsidies

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Subsidies page, click **Create Subsidy.**

2. Enter subsidy data in the Create Subsidy page.

3. When the terms of the subsidy are defined, click **Create**.

The following table describes selected fields on the Subsidies pages.

Create Subsidy Field References

Field	Description
Exclusive	Determines whether subsidy can be used with other subsidies.
Available on Release	Determines whether subsidy is available when equipment comes off lease and is subsequently re-leased.

Field	Description
Basis	Determines the basis on which the subsidy will be calculated. After selecting the basis, enter the required parameters to calculate the subsidy.
Stream Type	Determines accounting for payment streams.
Accounting Method	Select Amortize to amortize a subsidy over the life of a lease. Select Net to recognize subsidies in one period.
Net on Funding	Select Bill to generate a Receivables invoice. Select Fund to deduct subsidy from the funding disbursement.
Visible to Customers	Determines whether subsidy will be visible to customers or not.
Recourse	Determines whether subsidy is subject to recourse and must be refunded to the vendor if the lease is terminated early.
Refund Basis	If a subsidy is subject to recourse, select the refund basis and define the formula to calculate the refund amount.
Maximum Financed Amount	Limits the basis amount that is applied to a subsidy.
Maximum Subsidy Amount	Limits the amount of subsidy to be applied to the contract.

Define Subsidy Criteria

Prerequisites

Must have created a subsidy.

Must have set up Oracle Inventory, Receivables, Financial Products, TCA, and Standard Industry Code (SIC) to generate a list of values in the Subsidy Criterion page.

Navigation

Setup > Pricing > Subsidy Application

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Subsidy Criteria page, click **Create Subsidy Criterion.**

    The Create Subsidy Criterion page appears.

2. Select the subsidy Name and enter subsidy attributes.

3. Click **Create.**

The following table describes selected fields on the Subsidies Criteria pages.

Field References for Subsidy Criteria

Field	Description
Industry Organization	Oracle Inventory Organization name.
Item	Oracle Inventory master item.
Customer Credit Class	The credit class of customer found in TCA. LOV: query is from okl_cus_credit_classes_uv (AR_LOOKUPS CCC WHERE ccc.lookup_type=AR_CMGT_TRADE_RATINGS) (Oracle Receivables)
Sales Territory	Territory of sales. LOV: query from okl_ra_territories_uv (RA_TERRITORIES) (Oracle Receivables)
Product	Financial product name.
Industry Code Type	The Standard Industry Code (SIC) type. LOV: query is from okl_industry_code_types_uv (AR_LOOKUPS and idty.lookup_type=3. SIC_CODE_TYPE (Oracle Receivables)
Industry Code	The Standard Industry Code (SIC) reference. LOV: query is from okl_industry_codes_uv (AR_LOOKUPS) (Oracle Receivables)

Set Up Sales Tax

Sales tax set up in Lease Management consists of the following tasks:

1. Set Profile Option

2. Set Up in Oracle Lease Management

3. Set Up in Oracle Receivables

4. Set Up in Oracle Inventory

5. Set Up in Oracle Trading Community Architecture (TCA)

For information on sales tax, see Sales Tax., *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*

Set Profile Option

Before sales tax can be calculated in Lease Management, you must set the profile option Tax: Lease Management Installed to Yes. This profile option activates the Fiscal Classification tab on the Tax Group page in Oracle Receivables so you can evaluate the Tax Code in a Tax group.

Set Up in Oracle Lease Management

To set up sales tax in Lease Management, you must complete the following tasks:

• Enable Tax Calls

• Set Up Transaction Business Categories

• Set Up Business Tax Override

Enable Tax Calls

In the Tax Calculation page, select one or more of the three types of tax calls. Lease Management generates Tax Upfront, Invoice Tax, or Tax Schedule calls if you enable the tax call types on this page. This setup is operating unit specific.

When you save your work, a table is displayed to indicate what type of tax calls shall be generated for each transaction type. This is only for display and cannot be updated. If Tax Upfront is enabled, you must also select the stream type. This stream type is the default stream type used to bill Upfront tax.

Set Up Transaction Business Categories

In the Transaction Business Category page, click Create to associate a Transaction Business Category code to your specific lease details. The list of values for the

Transaction Business Category field on the Create Transaction Business Category page displays all active codes which have not previously been associated to your specific lease details. The list of values for the Transaction Business Category field on the Search Transaction Business Category page displays codes which have been previously associated to your specific lease details.

Lease details for Transaction Business Category codes can be updated. Transaction Business Category codes are available across operating units.

Before setting up transaction business category codes, you must ensure that lookup codes for the lookup type AR_TAX_TRX_BUSINESS_CATEGORY are defined.

The following table shows valid values for Transaction Business Category fields:

Transaction Business Category Fields

Lease Fields	Valid Values	TBC Defaulting Logic
Transaction Type	All sales tax enabled transaction types Null	Search for TBC with transaction-specific transaction type value. If not found, use TBC with transaction type ofNull
Stream Type	All stream types Null	Search for TBC with transaction-specific stream type value. If not found, use TBC with stream type o fNull
Purchase Option	$1 Buyout Fair Market Value Fixed Amount None Null	Search for TBC with transaction-specific purchase option value. If not found, use TBC with purchase option of Null.
Usage of Equipment	All user-defined values Null	Search for TBC with transaction-specific usage of equipment value. If not found, use TBC with usage of equipment value of Null.

Lease Fields	Valid Values	TBC Defaulting Logic
Vendor Location	All user-defined values Null	Search for TBC with transaction-specific Vendor Location value. If not found, use TBC with Vendor Location of Null.
Age of Equipment From	Any positive number Null	Search for TBC where the age of an asset on the transaction falls between the Age of Equipment From and the Age of Equipment To, or Null.
Age of Equipment To	Any positive number Null	Search for TBC where the age of an asset on the transaction falls between the Age of Equipment From and the Age of Equipment To, or Null.
Financial Product	All products defined by user Null	Search for TBC with transaction-specific Financial Product value. If not found, use TBC with Financial Product = Null
Interest Disclosed	Yes No	Search for TBC with transaction-specific Interest Disclosed value. If not found, use TBC with Interest Disclosed of No.
Transfer of Title	Yes No	Search for TBC with transaction-specific Transfer of Title value. If not found, use TBC with Transfer of Title of No.
Sale/Lease Back	Yes No	Search for TBC with transaction-specific Sale/Lease Back value. If not found, use TBC with Sale/Lease back of No.

Lease Fields	Valid Values	TBC Defaulting Logic
Purchase of Lease	Yes No	Search for TBC with transaction-specific Purchase of Lease value. If not found, use TBC with Purchase of Lease of No.

Set Up Business Tax Override

In the Tax Basis Override page, associate a formula with each transaction type. If a formula is defined for the transaction type of a transaction, Lease Management evaluates the formula and replaces the default taxable basis amount with the amount returned by the formula. In this case the tax shall be calculated by applying the tax rate to the amount determined by the formula.

All parameters available for tax call are available to the formula for determining the tax basis amount. Tax basis override is applicable to upfront tax and invoice tax calculation only.

Set Up in Oracle Receivables

To set up sales tax in Oracle Receivables, see Set Up Oracle Receivables, page 4-26.

Set Up in Oracle Inventory

To set up sales tax in Oracle Inventory, see Define Inventory for Sales Tax, *Oracle Lease Management Implementation Guide*.

Set Up in Oracle Trading Community Architecture (TCA)

To set up sales tax in Oracle Trading Community Architecture (TCA), see Set Up Trading Community Architecture, page 4-57.

Set Up Property Tax

Property tax set up in Lease Management consists of the following tasks:

1. Set Up Property Tax Options

2. Set Up Property Tax Stream Types and Accounting Templates

3. Set Up Tax Authorities in Oracle Payables

4. Set Up Property Tax Import

For more information on property tax, see Property Tax, *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*.

Set Up Property Tax Options

You can set up property tax details at the operating unit level, and override these details when authoring a contract. Property tax details are entered in the Property Tax Options page, under the Setup tab and System Options subtab. All property tax details set up default onto your contracts. The following table explains property tax options:

Field	Description
Property Tax Applicable	When set to Yes, determines the property tax functionality is applicable for an asset.
Bill Property Tax	Property tax can be billed to lessee by selecting Estimated, Actual, or Estimated and Actual.
	1. **Estimated** - lessee billed for estimated property tax only
	2. **Actual** - lessee billed for actual property tax only. Actual property tax is imported from external applications only.
	3. **Estimated and Actual** - lessee is billed for the estimated property tax and the adjustment resulting from the property tax reconciliation. If you bill estimated property tax, you can bill the difference between actual and estimated tax as an adjustment. If the actual property tax is greater than estimated tax billed, you can create an invoice for the difference. If the actual property tax is less than estimated tax billed, you can create a credit memo.
	4. **None** - lessee is not billed any property tax. This is the default value.
Define Property Tax on Sales Quote	Set to Yes, applies property tax details and payment options on sales quotes. The default value is Yes.

Field	Description
Create Property Tax Payable Invoice	Set to Yes, enables the creation of payable invoices to the tax authorities after tax details have been imported into Lease Management. The default value is No.

Set Up Property Tax Stream Types and Accounting Templates

You can define stream types with the purposes of Estimated Property Tax and Actual Property tax. Stream types will not be considered in the yield calculation. For information on setting up stream types, see

Set up accounting templates to account for both the billing and payment of tax. For information on setting up accounting templates, see Define Lease Accounting Templates., page 6-26

Set Up Tax Authorities in Oracle Payables

If you want to pay tax authorities for the actual property tax amount, set them up as tax vendors in Oracle Payables. To set up tax vendors, see the *Oracle Payables User Guide*.

Set Up Property Tax Import

To import third party application property tax files, you must complete the following tasks:

1. In the Property Tax Options page, Property Tax Applicable must be set to Yes.

2. The tax authority must be defined as a tax vendor in Oracle Payables.

Define Insurance

About Oracle Lease Management Insurance Products

The main goal of insurance functionality within Oracle Lease Management is to ensure that assets within contract agreements have adequate insurance coverage. This can be provided in one of the following ways:

• The lessor sells an insurance product to the lessee.

The insurance product is provided indirectly via an intermediary insurance provider.

- The lessee can provide proof of third party insurance coverage to the lessor.

Lessors can also sell optional insurance products that reduce lessee business risk, such as life, property and casualty insurance.

These implementation tasks affect the setup of Oracle Lease Management insurance products. Also see Define Insurance Providers, page 4-52.

- Set up Insurance Item Type Profile Option

- Define Insurance Factor Lookups

- Define Insurance Factor Lookups

- Define Insurer Ranking

- Define Insurance Products

- Define Insurance Asset Classes

- Define Insurance Rates

- Define Insurance Exclusions

- Define Parameters for Automatic Placement Business Rules

Set up Insurance Item Type Profile Option

Required

To work with insurance products in Oracle Lease Management, you must set up the profile option **OKL: Insurance Item Type** in System Administration to point to your insurance item type.

You can set up the profile option **OKL: Insurance Item Type** at the Site or Responsibility level.

For more information, see the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide.*

Prerequisites

Define the insurance item type in Oracle Inventory.

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

System Administration

Navigation

Profile > System

Define Insurance Class Lookups

Required

To define your insurance asset classes, you must first define an Insurance Class Lookup of OKL_INSURANCE_ASSET_CLASS.

One or more asset categories are assigned to insurance classes. These groupings of asset categories to insurance classes create logical classes for determining insurance premium rates for products. For more information, see Define Insurance Asset Classes".

To create or modify any lookup types and lookup names which relate to Oracle Lease Management, you must have the Application Developer responsibility within Oracle Applications.

For more information, see the *Oracle Applications User's Guide.*

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Application Developer

Module

Application Object Library

Navigation

Application > Lookups > Application Object Library

Define Insurance Factor Lookups

Required

To define your insurance products, you must first define an Insurance Factor Lookup of OKL_INSURANCE_FACTOR.

For lease insurance products, set up the insurance factor lookup Equipment Cost.

An optional insurance product could be a life insurance policy, with an insurance factor of age. For this situation, you must set up an insurance factor lookup of Age.

To create or modify any lookup types and lookup names which relate to Oracle Lease Management, you must have the Application Developer responsibility within Oracle Applications.

For more information, see the *Oracle Applications User's Guide.*

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Application Developer

Module

Application Object Library

Navigation

Application > Lookups > Application Object Library

Define Insurer Ranking

Required

If a lessee does not provide third party insurance information within a certain time frame after contract activation, the lessor can add insurance to the contract.

To decide which insurance provider is selected, if more than one provider offers coverage for the same range of asset costs, you must rank your insurance providers. This ranking is then used in the determination of the insurance placement.

Prerequisites

Define the insurance provider as an insurance supplier in Oracle Payables.

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Insurance > Insurer Ranking

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click Create Insurer Ranking.

2. In the Create Insurer Ranking page, select the Country.

3. Select the insurance Provider.

4. Select the Ranking number.

5. Enter the Effective From date, and optionally the Effective To date, if known.

6. Click Create.

Define Insurance Products

Required

All insurance products provided by the lessor must be defined in Oracle Lease Management.

Each insurance product must reference an item code in Oracle Inventory.

You must choose whether the product is an lease insurance product or an optional insurance product.

For optional insurance products, you must select the insurance factor, such as age, upon which the insurance product coverage is based. For lease insurance products, the insurance factor is always the original equipment cost.

The insurance factor must have a minimum and a maximum value associated with it, such as minimum and maximum age allowed by the product, or lowest and highest asset cost.

You must also specify

- The minimum and maximum coverage.

- The minimum and maximum period for the deal.

- The start and end dates for the product.

Prerequisites

Define Items, page 4-18

Define Insurance Providers, page 4-52

Set up Insurance Item Type Profile Option

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Insurance > Insurance Products

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click the Create Insurance Product button.

2. In the Create Insurance product page, enter the Product Name.

3. Oracle Inventory.

4. Select a Provider, as registered in Oracle Payables.

5. Enter the Policy Symbol. This serves as the prefix for all policy numbers derived from this product.

6. Select the Insurance Type (Lease Product or Optional Product).

7. Select the Factor Name if the insurance type is Optional Product.

   If the insurance type is Lease Product, select Equipment Cost for the Factor Name,

8. Enter the minimum and maximum values to be allowed for the insurance factor for all rate ranges.

9. Enter the minimum and maximum values for the Coverage of Optional Products.

10. Enter the minimum and maximum values for the Deal Length in months.

11. Enter the Effective From date, and optionally the Effective To date, if known.

12. Click Create.

Define Insurance Asset Classes

Required

Each asset category to be covered by lease insurance must match an insurance class set up in Oracle Lease Management. An insurance class can be used for multiple asset categories. The mapping of an asset category to an insurance class creates an insurance asset class, which is a required parameter for the creation of an insurance rate.

Prerequisites

Define Insurance Factor Lookups

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Insurance > Insurance Asset Classes

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click the Create Asset Class button.

2. On the Create Insurance Asset Class page, select the Insurance Class.

3. Select the Asset Category.

4. Enter the Effective From date and optionally the Effective To date, if known.

5. Click Create.

Define Insurance Rates

Required

For calculating premiums, the insurance factor which has been assigned to a product can be broken down into ranges, which must not overlap.

You associate a separate insurance rate for each factor range. For example, for a life insurance product with a factor of applicant's age, the range of 18-35 can carry one rate and 36-65 can carry a different rate. Each rate for the specified range applies to only one country.

For each insurance rate, you must specify the rate paid to the insurer (also known as the provider), and the rate to be charged to the policy holder (the lessee).

The rate multiplied against the OEC factor for lease products or the coverage amount for optional products determines the premium.

For lease insurance products only, you must also specify the insurance asset class for the insurance rate.

Prerequisites

Define Insurance Products

Define Insurance Asset Classes

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Insurance > Insurance Rates

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click the Create Rate button.

2. On the Create Insurance Rate page, select the Country.

3. Select the Product Name.

   As you select the product name, the factor for the product is displayed.

4. For a lease insurance product, select the Insurance Asset Class.

   This is the insurance asset class to be associated with this insurance rate.

5. Enter a minimum and maximum values for the factor range for this insurance rate.

6. Enter the Insurer rate as a percentage, that is, the rate paid to the provider.

7. Enter the Lessee rate as a percentage, that is, the rate charged to the policy holder (the lessee).

8. Enter the Effective From date, and optionally the Effective To date, if known.

9. Click Create.

10. If your insurance product has different rates for different factor ranges, repeat steps 1 through 8 for each new rate for the insurance product within each country.

Define Insurance Exclusions

Optional

You can identify industries and asset categories within a country that are not insurable, by creating insurance exclusions (also known as insurance restrictions).

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Operations Manager

Navigation

Setup > Insurance > Insurance Restrictions

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Create Insurance Restriction page, first select the Country.

2. Select the Asset Category, as registered in Oracle Assets.

3. Enter the Industry Type.

   Industry Type means the appropriate SIC (Standard Industry Code).

   The industries that you want to exclude must match the type value entered on the customer record. This entry differs depending on the country. In the USA, Industry Type means the appropriate SIC (Standard Industry Code).

4. Optionally enter some Comments.

5. Enter the Effective From date and the Effective To date, if known.

6. Click Create.

Define Parameters for Automatic Placement of Insurance Business Rules

Required

If a lessee does not provide third party insurance information within a certain time frame after contract activation, the lessor can add insurance to the contract.

The auto-placement of insurance program is subject to various conditions, several of which are set up as seeded system profile values, which you can alter to suit your particular business requirements.

The system profile conditions which you can change each contain a parameter, or are subject to a flag which enables or disables a feature.

The following table shows the full list of automatic insurance placement conditions and the seeded parameter values released with Oracle Lease Management.

Insurance Placement Conditions and Seeded Values

Condition	Seeded Parameter Value
Notify customer X days prior to insurance expiration	X = 60
Inform customer of expiration?	Yes
If proof of insurance not provided X days after contract activation, trigger automatic placement	X = 30
If deal size is greater than X, do not quote insurance	X = US $1,000,000
If term is less than X months, do not quote insurance	X = 6
If term is greater than X months, do not quote insurance	X = 120
Activate insurance policy after X days	X = 90
Activate insurance after X% of premium is paid	X = 50%
Premium paid at X% of total	X = 80%
Cancellation upon receipt of third party details?	Yes
Maximum number of months to refund	X = 6
Number of months after first premium paid to receive a refund	X = 6

For more information about system profiles, and how to change them, see the *Oracle Application System Administrator's Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

System Administrator

Module

System Administration

Navigation

Profile > System > Profile System Values

Set Up Pricing Engine Integration for Stream Generation

This section outlines the process for setting up the integration of the pricing engine through the XML Gateway between Oracle Lease Management and a third-party lease price modeling software program. This setup enables pricing, stream generation, and yield calculation with your third-party lease price modeling software.

Synchronize the pricing setups for the external pricing engine software with your current Oracle Lease Management operations. For example, do not allow the external pricing software setup to return streams for state tax depreciation if you are not updating state tax depreciation on lease contracts.

To enable this functionality, you must set up the XML Gateway in such a way that the configuration includes both inbound and outbound operations. Stream generation is a two-way process, whereby lease and/or loan contract details are sent out of Oracle Lease Management into a pricing engine, which then returns relevant information, including stream schedules and yield calculations.

> **Note:** Prior to setting up the XML Gateway, you must have the Oracle XML Gateway software, the Oracle Transport Agent (OTA) and Oracle Advanced Queues properly installed.

You must perform these tasks to properly set up the XML Gateway:

- Define the Pricing Engine as a Customer in Oracle Receivables

- Define Profile Options

- Define Trading Partner and Transaction Types

- Schedule Pricing Time Out Concurrent Program

Define the Pricing Engine as a Customer in Oracle Receivables

Required

You must define the third-party lease price modeling software that you are using for stream generation as a standard customer in Oracle Receivables. At a minimum, you must enter the name and address of the fields.

> **Important:** The Name you use when setting up the third-party lease price modeling software as a customer in Oracle Receivables is the exact name that you enter when you configure the OKL: Stream Generation Pricing Engine Name profile option.

For more details on defining customers, see the *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Receivables Manager

Navigation

Customers > Standard

Define Profile Options

You must define some specific profile options at the site level with specific values to enable the XML Gateway and Oracle Lease Management stream generation. The following table describes stream generation profile options..

Profile Options and Associated Values for Stream Generation

Profile Option	Required Value
ECX: Log File Path	The value of the environment variable APPLPTMP
	(Example: For UNIX, find the value using this command: $echo$APPLPTMP)
OKL: Stream Generation Log Directory	The value of the environment variable APPLPTMP

Profile Option	Required Value
OKL: Stream Generation Pricing Engine Name	<third-party lease price modeling software name>
	This must be the same as the customer name defined in Oracle Receivables.
OKL: Stream Generation Pricing Engine URL	<URL of the pricing engine where it accepts inbound XML messages.>
	Note: This URL must contain the port number.
OKL: Stream Generation Time Out	The time in minutes after which a pending request for Streams Generation is marked as TIMED_OUT.

For more information on defining profile options, see the *Oracle Applications System Administrator User Guide*.

Prerequisites

Define the third-party lease price modeling software as a customer in Oracle Receivables.

Responsibility

System Administrator

Navigation

Profile > System

Define Trading Partner and Transaction Types

Required

To enable inbound and outbound messages through the XML Gateway, you must define the third-party lease price modeling software as a Trading Partner in the XML Gateway, and then configure all the possible transactions that occur between the trading partner and Oracle Lease Management.

The four seeded transaction types are: Outbound/In Bound Lease and Outbound/In Bound Loan.

These topics cover how to create a trading partner and set up inbound and outbound transaction types:

Create a Trading Partner

Set up Outbound Transaction Types

Set up Inbound Transaction Types

Create a Trading Partner

The following steps describe how to create a trading partner. Following these procedures are steps on setting up outbound and inbound transaction types.

Prerequisites

Define the third-party lease price modeling software as a customer in Oracle Receivables.

Responsibility

XML Gateway

Navigation

Setup > Define Trading Partners

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Trading Partner Type field, select Customer from the list of values.

2. In the Trading Partner Name field, select the name from the list of values.

    This must be the name that you set up in Oracle Receivables for your third-party lease price modeling software.

3. Choose the Trading Partner Site from the list of values.

4. In the Company Admin Email field, enter the e-mail address for the company contact in case of error notification.

5. Save your work.

The following steps describe how to set up transaction types:

Set up Outbound Transaction Types

Set up Inbound Transaction Types

Set Up Outbound Transaction Types

In the Trading Partner Details section, you must enter the details of the transactions to enable. The following steps outline the process of setting up a Lease Booking Outbound Transaction, one of the two outbound transactions used in Oracle Lease Management.

Define the third-party lease price modeling software as a customer in Oracle Receivables.

You have created a trading partner and have placed the trading partner in context. For more information, see Create a Trading Partner.

Responsibility

XML Gateway

Navigation

Setup > Define Trading Partners

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Transaction Type field, choose the transaction type OKL_ST, with a Transaction Sub type of LSBO and a direction of OUT.

   These transaction types are seeded. Selecting the one with the above values populates some other related fields.

2. In the Map field, choose OKL_STLEASEBOOKING_W3C10_OUT.

3. In the Connection/Hub field, choose DIRECT.

4. In the Protocol Type field, choose HTTP.

5. In the Username field, enter your database user name.

6. In the Password field, enter your database password.

   > **Note:** The password needs to be a minimum of five characters. If your password is less than five characters, then append it with colons (:) to make it five characters. If the setup for does not accept colons then you can use a lowercase **z** in its place. This is the database user name and password combination for the applications schema that has execute privileges on the **plsql** procedures.

7. In the protocol address field enter:

   <Your application's URL>oklLpSTProxySrvr.jsp.

   Example:

   http://xyz.us.oracle.com:5800/OA_HTML/oklLpSTProxySrvr.jsp.

Specify the port number for the apache application server in the protocol address.

> **Note:** Even if the apache application is running on port 80, specify the port number explicitly as 80.

8. In the Source Trading Partner Location code field, enter the name of your third-party lease price modeling software vendor.

9. Repeat steps 1-8 for the Loan Booking Outbound transaction type, using these values:

    - **Transaction Type**: OKL_ST

    - **Transaction Sub Type**: LNBO

    - **Direction**: OUT

    - **Map**: OKL_STLOANBOOKING_W3C10_OUT

    - **Connection/Hug**: DIRECT

    - **Protocol Type**: HTTP

    - **Username**: <your database user name>

    - **Password**: <your database password>

    - **Protocol Address**: <Your application's apache URL>oklLpSTProxySrvr.jsp

      For example: http://xyz.us.oracle.com:5800/OA_HTML/oklLpSTProxySrvr.jsp.

    - **Source Trading Partner Location**: <third-party lease price modeling software name>

10. For the Lease Restructure and Lease Renewals transaction types, repeat Step 9 with these changes:

    - **Transaction Sub Type**: LSRO

    - **Map**: OKL_STLEASERESTRUCT_W3C10_OUT

      (All other values remain the same as those used in Step 9.)

11. For the Lease Quotes transaction type, repeat Step 9 with these changes:

    - **Transaction Sub Type**: LSQO

    - **Map**: OKL_STLEASEQUOTE_W3C10_OUT

(All other values remain the same as those used in Step 9.)

12. For the Variable Interest Rate Loans and Loan Quotes transaction types, repeat Step 9 with these changes:

    • **Transaction Sub Type**: LNQO

    • **Map**: OKL_STLOANQUOTE_W3C10_OUT

    (All other values remain the same as those used in Step 9.)

13. For the Loan Restructure and Loan Renewals transaction types, repeat Step 9 with these changes:

    • **Transaction Sub Type**: LNRO

    • **Map**: OKL_STLOANRESTRUCT_W3C10_OUT

14. Save the records.

Set Up Inbound Transaction Types

The following steps outline the process of setting up a Lease Booking In Bound Transaction, one of the two in bound transactions that Oracle Lease Management uses.

Prerequisites

Define the third-party lease price modeling software as a customer in Oracle Receivables.

You have created a trading partner and have placed the trading partner in context. For more information, see Create a Trading Partner.

Responsibility

XML Gateway

Navigation

Setup > Define Trading Partners

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. In the Transaction Type field, choose the transaction type OKL_ST, with a Transaction Sub type of LSBI and a direction of IN.

   These transaction types are seeded. Selecting the one with the above values populates some other related fields.

2. In the Map field, choose OKL_STLEASEBOOKING_W3C10_IN.

3. In the Source Trading Partner Location code field, enter the name of your third-party lease price modeling software vendor.

4. Repeat steps 1-3 for the Loan Booking In Bound transaction type, using these values:

   - **Transaction Type**: OKL_ST

   - **Transaction Sub Type**: LNBI

   - **Direction**: IN

   - **Map**: OKL_STLOANBOOKING_W3C10_IN

   - **Source Trading Partner Location**: <third-party lease price modeling software name>

5. Repeat step 4 for Lease Restructure and Lease Renewals In Bound transaction types, with these value changes:

   - **Transaction Sub Type**: LSRI

   - **Map**: OKL_STLOANRESTRUCT_W3C10_IN

     (All other values remain the same as those used in Step 4.)

6. Repeat step 4 for Lease Quotes In Bound transaction type, with these value changes:

   - **Transaction Sub Type**: LSQI

   - **Map**: OKL_STLEASERESTRUCT_W3C10_IN

     (All other values remain the same as those used in Step 4.)

7. Repeat step 4 for Loan Quotes and Variable Interest Rate Loans In Bound transaction types, with these value changes:

   - **Transaction Sub Type**: LNQI

   - **Map**: OKL_STLOANRESTRUCT_W3C10_IN

     (All other values remain the same as those used in Step 4.)

8. Repeat step 4 for Loan Restructure and Loan Renewals Inbound transaction types, with these value changes:

   - **Transaction Sub Type**: LNRI

- **Map**: OKL_STLOANRESTRUCT_W3C10_IN

9. Save your work.

> **Note:** The Source Trading Partner Location, the Customer name in Oracle Receivables, and the **OKL: Stream Generation Pricing Engine Name** profile option all MUST contain the exact same name.

Schedule Pricing Time Out Concurrent Program

In the course of generating streams, requests are periodically sent back and forth through the XML Gateway. In the event that a request does not get returned in the system, you must enable a facility to clear out these requests. In Oracle Lease Management, you run the **OKL Pricing Time Out** concurrent program.

This concurrent program should be scheduled to run periodically, depending upon the needs of your system. You can reschedule this concurrent program --such as run more often, less often, and so on--as your needs change.

For more information on setting up and running concurrent programs, see the *Oracle Applications System Administrator User Guide*.

Prerequisites

None

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Contract Administrator

Navigation

Requests > Run

Define Workflow

Oracle Workflow automates and improves business processes. With Workflow, you can route information of any type to both people inside and outside your enterprise. The routing of information follows business rules that you can modify.

With Oracle Workflow, you can:

- Create, view, or modify a business process by dragging and dropping components.

- Use the Workflow Engine to monitor workflow states and coordinate a process's routing of activities.

- Send e-mail to contacts to notify them of events or pending activities that can optionally require a response.

- View, monitor, and track the progress of a workflow and its history.

For example, you can use Workflow to start a contract approval process that requires multiple levels of approval by both internal and external approval parties.

There is a specific modification that you must make to an Oracle Order Management workflow to sell inventory items through Oracle iStore. This modification adds Oracle Lease Management processes to the Order Management workflow and is required for the standard remarketing process. For more information, see Modify Order Management Workflow to Enable Standard Remarketing.

For more information on setting up workflows, see the *Oracle Workflow Guide*.

Seeded Business Events For Lease Contract Authoring

Lease Management includes seeded business events that can automate lease authoring business processes. Authoring events include clicking on Create, Update, or other action-type buttons and hyperlinks. Enabled events are triggered after the record is written to the database, when a confirmation message such as "Successfully created / updated / deleted" is displayed. See Seeded Business Events For Lease Contract Authoring, page G-1 for a list of the seeded Lease Management business events.

Use these Lease Management business events to connect to Oracle Workflow business events to create tasks, record notes, send notifications, and route contracts to colleagues.

To implement the seeded business events in Lease Management:

1. Enable seeded business events. You may also modify or subsequently disable business events.

2. Associate lease authoring business events to Oracle Workflow business events, including registering appropriate deferred (asynchronous) subscriptions. See Oracle Workflow documentation.

Additionally, use these business events to facilitate extensibility to existing APIs.

Synchronous Subscription Workflows Require Customization

You may use the Lease Management business events to create custom workflows. Customized workflows using Lease Management business events may include synchronous subscriptions. Synchronous subscriptions, however, not usually recommended, require customized workflows.

Modify Order Management Workflow to Enable Standard Remarketing

Required

To sell remarketed inventory items through Oracle iStore, you must complete several setup steps, including modifying the Order Management workflow OM Order Header. These modifications enable Oracle Lease Management's system to:

- Create remarket invoice

- Dispose of asset

- Reduce the item quantity in Order Management

- Update the asset return status

> **Note:** Make sure that you are fully trained in Oracle Workflow Builder and database manipulation before you make any modifications to workflows.

Prerequisites

Oracle Workflow Builder must be installed.

Oracle Lease Management's Customized Order Management Order Header Workflow must exist.

Responsibility

Database Administrator with appropriate database access

Navigation

Open Workflow Builder

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Within the Workflow Builder, find and open the item type OM Order Header from within the database.

   This item type is Order Management's default order header workflow

2. Find and open the item type OKL - AM : OM Order Header from within the database.

   This item type is Oracle Lease Management's modified Order Management workflow.

3. From the workflow builder navigator tree, expand the Functions branch and drag and drop the following function nodes from OKL -AM : OM Order Header item type into the OM Order Header item type:

- Create Remarket Invoice

- Dispose Asset

- Reduce Item Quantity

- Update Asset Return Status

4. Expand the Processes branch and drag and drop the OKL Order Flow - Generic process diagram from the OKL - AM : OM Order Header item type into the OM Order Header item type.

5. Validate OM Order Header item type and save it in the database.

   In the error message dialogue box, search for any errors that directly relate to the modification you just made. Ignore all others.

   If there are no related errors, you have successfully added Oracle Lease Management's modified Order Management process flow to the item type OM Order Header.

Guidelines

During the Oracle Order Management implementation, you must set up Oracle Lease Management transaction types for Order Header and Order Line. You must also set up document sequencing for this transaction type.

Set Up Credit Checklists

Responsibility

Lease Super User, Funding Approver, Funding Manager, Credit Manager, Credit Approver

Navigation

Setup > Origination > Checklist

Prerequisites

You must have set up and defined item codes for the potential actions to be entered on checklists. Do this in the Application Developer Lookup Object Library. See Define Lookups.

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. If you want to use credit checklists, click Create Checklist.

2. Enter the name of the checklist.

3. In the Type field, select Credit Line checklist template (or Funding Request checklist template) from the list of values.

4. You may enter a short or longer description (or both) for the checklist.

5. Enter the Effective Date range of the checklist template.

6. Navigate to Setup > Checklist > Checklist Contents.

7. The Checklist Contents Page appears, allowing you to enter the checklist items.

8. If you want to delete one or more items from the checklist, select the Remove check box next to each item, and click Update.

9. For the items that you want to be on the checklist, in the Item Code field, click the flashlight icon and select the item code from the list of item codes.

10. The remaining fields for the item are displayed: Item, Description, and Effective From date.

11. Repeat step 9 for each separate item that you want to include on the checklist.

12. Click Update to save your work.

Customizing Users' Lease Management Home Pages

See the *Oracle Self-Service Web Applications Implementation* manual.

Set Up Vendor Residual Sharing

Overview

To set up vendor residual sharing, complete the following tasks.

• Set Up Vendors in Oracle Purchasing

• Optionally, Set Up Vendor Residual Sharing Formula

- Add Vendor Residual Sharing Stream to Stream Generation Template

Set Up Vendors in Oracle Purchasing

To set up vendors in Oracle Purchasing, see the *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide.*

Set Up Vendor Residual Sharing Formula

To enable different vendor residual sharing calculations under different program agreements, Lease Management enables you to create formulas to be used in calculating residual sharing. To create your own formula, see Define Formulas, page 6-17.

If you choose not to create a custom formula, you can use the seeded Lease Management formula, Vendor Residual Share, which has the following calculation:

Vendor Residual Share = (Proceeds minus Cost Basis) * Residual Sharing %

In this formula, Proceeds are the sales proceeds in Fixed Assets: the amount received from the sale to the lessee, the amount received from remarketing to a third party, or the amount received from scrapping the asset. The Cost Basis is the residual value stated in future value terms.

Add Vendor Residual Sharing Stream

Before vendor residual sharing can be processed, you must complete the following set up tasks in Lease Management.

- **Vendor Residual Sharing Stream Purpose** - Add the Vendor Residual Sharing Stream Purpose to the Stream Generation Template. See Define Streams and Pricing.

- **Vendor Residual Sharing Accounting Template** - Define the Accounting Template with the following values:

  - Transaction Type = Disbursement

  - Stream Type = Vendor Residual Share

  - Formula = Contract Residual Share

Define the Accounting Template lines with the appropriate account numbers. See Define Lease Accounting Templates.

A

Profile Options

This appendix covers the following topics:

- Seeded Profile Options For System Administrators and Users
- Seeded Profile Options Function Descriptions

Seeded Profile Options For System Administrators and Users

During implementation, you set a value for each user profile option to specify how *Oracle Lease Management* controls access to and processes data. Generally, the system administrator sets and updates profile values.

For more information, see the topic about setting up profile options in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*.

The following table shows:

- As a User, whether you can view or update the profile option.

- As a System Administrator, at which levels you can update the profile options at the user, responsibility, application, or site levels.

- Whether the profile option is required, and the option's default value (some profile options have no default).

The allowable options under the User and System Administrator headings are:

+ - You can update the profile option.

V - You can view the profile option value, but you cannot change it.

0 - You cannot view or change the profile option value.

The following table displays Lease Management seeded Profile Options.

Oracle Lease Management Seeded Profile Options

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Agent for Receiving Customer Response		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Agent for Receiving Vendor Response		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Agreement Change Request Approval Process		0	+	0	+	No	None
OKL: Allow Lease Contract Template Creation	V	+	+	+	+	Yes	No
OKL: Allow Manual Interest Rates	V	+	+			No	Yes
OKL: Allow Manual Termination Quote Create and Updates		+	V	V	V	No	None

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Allow Renewal Quote	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Apply Billing Adjustment	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: AR Payment Method for Credit Card	0	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Asset Addition Corporate Book	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Asset Update Enabled for a Contract	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Book the Contract without IRR		0	+	0	0	No	Yes
OKL: Cancel policy with proof of third party insurance	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Collections Approver		+	+	+	+	No	None

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Contract Administrator		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Contract Items Inventory Organization	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Contract Renewal Representative		+	+	+	+	Yes	None
OKL: Contract Restructure Representative		+	+	+	+	Yes	None
OKL: Contract Total Asset Lines		0	+	0	+	No	10
OKL: Credit Analyst	+	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Credit Approver		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Credit Line Approver	+	+	+	+	+	No	

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Credit Line Approval Process		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Cure Approval User		+	0	0	0	No	System Administrator
OKL: Days After Contract Booking Date to Activate Policy		0	+	0	+	No	None
OKL: Days After Contract Booking Date to Policy Creation		0	+	0	+	No	None
OKL: Debug	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Debug Level		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Default Note Type	+	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Default Price List	V	V	+	+	+	Yes	

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Default Remarketer Team for Asset Returns	V	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Default Subinventory	V	V	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Display Contract Additional Information in Customer Self Service		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Display Contract Additional Information in Vendor Self Service		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Email Identity	V	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL : Enable Business Events for Batch Processes		+	+	+	+	No	None

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: End of Term Values Access Level	V	+	+			No	Update
OKL: Front End Approval Process		V	+	0	+	No	None
OKL: Fulfillment Server	V	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Fulfillment User	+	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Funding Approver	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Funding Request Approver	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Generate Accruals Concurrent Workers		V	+	V	+	No	None
OKL: Hangup On End	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Insurance Item Type	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Insurance quote deal size limit	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Insurance quote deal term maximum months	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Insurance quote deal term minimum months	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL Insurance quote duration in days	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Interactions - Default Action	+	+	+	+	+	Note	
OKL: Interactions - Default Action Item	+	+	+	+	+	Note	
OKL: Interactions - Default Outcome	+	+	+	+	+	Note	

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Interactions - Enable Auto Wrapup	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Interactions - Enable Automatic Start	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Interactions - Enable Change Activity	+	+	+	_	+	No	
OKL: Interactions - Generate Event Activity	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Interactions - Record Media Item ID	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Interactions - Start On Query	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: iPayment Account ID		0	+	0	+	No	None

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Lead days to notify customer of insurance policy expiration	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Lease Center Default Tab	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Lease Contract Approval Process	+	0	+	0	+	No	None
OKL: Lease Contract Approver	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Lease Funding Approval Process	+	0	+	0	+	No	None
OKL: Lease Rate Access Level	V	+	+			No	Update
OKL: Manual Termination Quote Representative	+	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Maximum Lines Per Worker		0	0	0	+	No	25,000

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Maximum Number of Months Allowed After Payment for Refund	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Maximum Number of Months to Refund	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Minimum Percent of Premium Paid for Policy Activation	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Notify Customer of Insurance Policy Expiration	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Number of days a sales quote remains valid	+	V	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Operating Agreement Approval Process		0	+	0	+	No	None

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Payment Frequency for Automatic Insurance	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Percent of Total Premium to Pay	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Pre-tax IIR Percentage Limit		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Pre-tax IRR Percentage Limit	+	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Pricing Enhancements Approval Process		V	+	0	+	No	None
OKL: Program Agreement Approval Process		V	+	0	+	No	None
OKL: Recent Number of Days	V	+	+	+	+	No	

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Remarketing Inventory Organization	V	V	V	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Reporting Product Asset Book	V	0	+	0	+	For multi-GAAP: Yes, otherwise No	
OKL: Script Launch on Interaction	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Script Launch on UWQ Delivery	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Scripting Installation	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL: Small Balance Write-Off Tolerance	V	+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Split Asset Retirement Type	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Stream Generation Log Directory	V	+	+	+	+	Yes	

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Stream Generation Pricing Engine Name	V	0	0	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Stream Generation Time Out	+	+	+	+	+	Yes	10
OKL: Stream Generation URL for Pricing Engine	0	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Streams for Booking Path	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Subsidy Pool Approval Process						No	None
OKL: Subsidy Pool Global Access		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Third Party Task Group ID	0	0	+	0	+	Yes	

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Third Party Task Owner Group ID	V	0	+	0	+	Yes	
OKL: Transportation Department Notification	+	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL Update Asset Return Rules	+	+	+	+	+	Yes for non-financial update, otherwise No	
OKL Update Billing Structure	+	+	+	+	+	Yes for non-financial update, otherwise No	
OKL: Update Descriptive Flexfields from Lease Center		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Update Evergreen Eligibility	+	+	+	+	+	No	
OKL Update Late Charges Rules	+	+	+	+	+	Yes for non-financial update, otherwise No	

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL Update Misc Non Financial Information	+	+	+	+	+	Yes for non-financial update, otherwise No	
OKL Update Party Information	+	+	+	+	+	Yes for non-financial update, otherwise No	
OKL Update Renewal Options	+	+	+	+	+	Yes for non-financial update, otherwise No	
OKL: Update Sales Tax Calculation Rules		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL Update Termination Option Rules	+	+	+	+	+	Yes for non-financial update, otherwise No	
OKL: Use Account Generator Workflow	+	+	+	+	+	No	No
OKL: Vendor Access Sales Additional Info		+	+	+	+	No	None

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Vendor Access Sales Objects		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Vendor Approval Email From		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Vendor Approval Email Subject		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Vendor Approval Template		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Vendor Contact Email		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Vendor Notification Email From		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Vendor Notification Email Subject		+	+	+	+	No	None
OKL: Vendor Notification Template		+	+	+	+	No	None

Profile Option Name and Level	User	Sys Admin: User	Sys Admin: Resp.	Sys Admin: Application	Sys Admin: Site	Required?	Default Value
OKL: Waive Service Fee	V	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: Waive Service Fee Limit	V	+	+	+	+	Yes	
OKL: WRITE_CUSTOMER_TEMPLATE	+	+	+	+	+	Yes	

For descriptions of each profile option, including the function of the profile option as it relates to Oracle Lease Management functionality, see Seeded Profile Options Function Descriptions, page A-18.

Seeded Profile Options Function Descriptions

The following table provides descriptions of each profile option, including the function of the profile option as it relates to Oracle Lease Management functionality.

Oracle Lease Management Profile Option Descriptions

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Agent for Receiving Customer Response	Determines the agent to receive customer responses for fulfillment documents.
OKL: Agent for Receiving Vendor Response	Determines the agent to receive vendor responses for fulfillment documents.
OKL: Agreement Change Request Approval Process	Enables users to configure the approval process for agreement change requests using Oracle Approvals Manager (AME). If the user does not define this option, then the system approves the agreement change requests automatically.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Allow Lease Contract Template Creation	Allows user to create lease contract template.
OKL: Allow Manual Interest Rates	Determines whether or not the user can manually enter interest rates, as an alternative to selecting a Standard Rate Template.
OKL: Allow Manual Termination Quote Create and Updates	Allows users to create and update with purchase and without purchase manual termination quotes.
OKL: Allow Renewal Quote	Used to check whether a renewal quote can be requested from the Lease Center.
OKL: Apply Billing Adjustment	Used with contract revisions and rebookings that change financial information. If set to Null, credit memos are not automatically applied to invoices in Receivables. Users must do this manually. If set to Seeded, credit memos are automatically applied to invoices by applying to the invoices from the original contract version first, in date order. If set to Custom, users can customize the way that credit memos are applied. Users must create a custom package with the rules.
OKL: AR Payment Method for Credit Card	Sets the payment method on the AR receipt record for to Credit Card.
OKL: Asset Addition Corporate Book	Value determines the default asset book where assets are recorded when the user or organization books/activates a new contract.
OKL: Asset Update Enabled for a Contract	Determines tax status updates from the Lease Center. If set to Yes, the user can update the tax status and exempt number on the Asset Details page in the Lease Center.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Book the Contract without IRR	Enables the user to book a contract without the IRR.
	The Internal Stream Generator API uses this profile value. When the profile option is set to Y, if the API cannot calculate the yields or there are errors in calculations, then the program does not error out and the process continues to update the okc_K_headers_tl.comments with an error message. When the profile option is set to N, if the API cannot calculate the yields or there are errors in calculations, then the program errors out and the process comes to a halt.
OKL: Cancel policy with proof of third party insurance	Allows the insurance program to cancel a lessor-provided insurance policy when proof of a third party policy is recorded for the contract.
OKL: Collections Approver	Used to identify the approver for collections.
OKL: Contract Administrator	Determines the contract administrator to approve the Transfer and Assumption requests.
OKL: Contract Items Inventory Organization	Determines the inventory organization used as the source for looking up inventory item master codes during asset line creation.
OKL: Contract Renewal Representative	Identifies the user to receive notifications for processing contract renewal requests originating in the Lease Center.
OKL: Contract Restructure Representative	Identifies the user to receive notifications for processing contract restructure requests for Non-Like-for-Like Equipment Exchanges originating in the Lease Center.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Contract Total Asset Lines	Determines the minimum number of asset lines for initiating batch mode processing. If the number of asset lines is less than this threshold, then the system initiates normal online activation. For example, if the profile value is zero, then the system initiates batch mode to book all contracts.
OKL: Credit Analyst	Determines the user who receives credit recommendation notifications. Assign value to set workflow notification for credit management.
OKL: Credit Approver	Used to identify the approver for credit line requests.
OKL: Credit Line Approver	Used to enable credit line approver role for the user.
OKL: Credit Line Approval Process	Determines which application process to use for credit line approval requests. Available options include None, Oracle Workflow and Oracle Approvals Management (AME).
OKL: Cure Approval User	Identifies the user to receive notifications to approve cure requests sent by the Request Cure Approvals program.
OKL: Days After Contract Booking Date to Activate Policy	Specifies the number of days after contract booking. The program that automatically activates insurance policies for assets not covered by an active insurance policy or third party insurance policy to determine the activation date uses this profile option's value.
OKL: Days After Contract Booking Date to Policy Creation	Specifies the number of days after contract booking. The program that automatically creates insurance policies for assets not covered by an active insurance policy or third party insurance policy to determine the creation date uses this profile option's value.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Debug	Determines whether Lease Management is running in debug mode or not. Profile used to display diagnostic information related to interaction history and UWQ drill down from the Lease Center.
OKL: Debug Level	Determines the level of debug messages printed in the log files.
OKL: Default Note Type	Used by the Lease Center to determine the type of interaction history note to create as a default when initiating a new note.
OKL: Default Price List	Price list, list of values. Select the default price list for remarketing. Set up the same price list for iStore.
OKL: Default Remarketer Team for Asset Returns	Remarketer list of values. Select the default remarketer team for asset returns.
OKL: Default Subinventory	Subinventory list of values. Select the default subinventory for remarketing.
OKL: Display Contract Additional Information in Customer Self Service	Enables display of descriptive flexfields for additional contract data in Customer Self Service.
OKL: Display Contract Additional Information in Vendor Self Service	Enables display of descriptive flexfields for additional contract data in Vendor Self Service.
OKL: Email Identity	Sets the FROM e-mail address for the user when sending notices or other correspondence from the Lease Center. Stores e-mail address that will be used as default if email address is not explicitly set.
OKL : Enable Business Events for Batch Processes	Enables business events for batch processes.
OKL: End of Term Access Level	Determines the user's access level to the assets' End of Term.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Front End Approval Process	Determines which application process to use when submitting approval requests for Sales Quotes and Lease Applications. Available options include None, Oracle Workflow and Oracle Approvals Management (AME).
OKL: Fulfillment Server	The path/name of the fulfillment server used by CRM Fulfillment when sending notices or other correspondence from the Lease Center.
OKL: Fulfillment User	User ID of user while sending fulfillment requests.
OKL: Funding Approver	Workflow role name for funding approval performer.
OKL: Funding Request Approver	Used to enable funding request approver role for the user.
OKL: Generate Accruals Concurrent Workers	Used by system administrators to control the child workers spawned by the parent Generate Accruals Master program.
OKL: Hangup On End	Determines whether the call management program used in the Lease Center automatically hangs up the call after an interaction is closed.
OKL: Insurance Item Type	Determines the inventory item type used for identifying and searching for insurance products from the user's inventory organization. Select from a list of values.
OKL: Insurance quote deal size limit	Contract amount which can be covered by lessor insurance. Contracts with a total covered asset cost over this amount (in the organization's functional currency) are excluded from the automatic insurance placement program.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Insurance quote deal term maximum months	Maximum contract term for which lessor can sell insurance. Contracts with a term longer than this number of months are excluded from the automatic insurance placement program.
OKL: Insurance quote deal term minimum months	Minimum contract term for which lessor can sell insurance. Contracts with a total covered asset cost less than this amount (in the organization's functional currency) are excluded from the automatic insurance placement program.
OKL: Insurance quote duration in days	Insurance quote duration in days.
OKL: Interactions - Default Action	Sets the user's default action type when creating new interaction records for a contract using the Lease Center.
OKL: Interactions - Default Action Item	Sets the user's default action item when creating new interaction records for a contract using the Lease Center.
OKL: Interactions - Default Outcome	Sets the user's default outcome when creating new interaction records for a contract using the Lease Center.
OKL: Interactions - Enable Auto Wrapup	Determines whether an interaction record is automatically closed in the Lease Center when the user selects a new contract. If set to Yes, interaction is wrapped up automatically without appearing in the wrap-up window.
OKL: Interactions - Enable Automatic Start	Enables Lease Center logic to automatically open a new interaction record when the user accesses the Lease Center.
OKL: Interactions - Enable Change Activity	Enables user to change action and action item of system generated interaction activities. If set to No, user cannot change the system generated action or action item on the Interaction window.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Interactions - Generate Event Activity	Determines whether or not interaction activity should be logged. If a profile is set to Yes, then the system logs the interaction; if the profile is set to No, the system logs no actions, and the user cannot close the interaction.
OKL: Interactions - Record Media Item ID	Required for media integration with Universal Work Queue. Setting this profile records which means of communication (e-mail, phone, and so on) was used in the interaction.
OKL: Interactions - Start On Query	Determines whether the Lease Center program opens the automatic interaction record (if enabled) upon contract query or some other event.
OKL: iPayment Account ID	Specifics the bank account to post payments received through the iPayment integration service when using the Make Payment function in Lease Management.
OKL: Lead days to notify customer of insurance policy expiration	Number of days before insurance policy (including third party) expiration that a notification is sent to a user.
OKL: Lease Center Default Tab	Determines which tab is automatically opened when the Lease Center is launched.
OKL: Lease Contract Approval Process	Determines which application process to use for lease contract approvals.
OKL: Lease Contract Approver	Workflow role name for lease contract approval process.
OKL: Lease Funding Approval Process	Determines which application process to use for lease funding approvals.
OKL: Lease Rates Access Level	Determines the user's access level to Lease Rate Factors used to determine the rent payments.
OKL: Manual Termination Quote Representative	Determines who to send manual termination quote requests to.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Maximum Lines Per Worker	Determines the maximum number of lines that a worker can process. The Contract Import process uses this profile value to improve it's performance.
OKL: Maximum Number of Months Allowed After Payment for Refund	Determines the maximum number of months after policy activation during which a refund can be performed for a policy cancellation.
OKL: Maximum Number of Months to Refund	Determines the maximum number of months of premium payments that can be refunded for a cancelled policy.
OKL: Minimum Percent of Premium Paid for Policy Activation	Determines the minimum payment amount required against an insurance policy for it to be activated.
OKL: Notify Customer of Insurance Policy Expiration	Determines whether the customer is to be notified of an expiring insurance policy.
OKL: Number of days a sales quote remains valid	The system adds this option's value to the Effective From date of a new sales quote to determine the Effective To date.
OKL: Operating Agreement Approval Process	Enables users to configure the approval process for operating agreements using Oracle Approvals Manager (AME). If the user does not define this option, then the system approves the agreement change requests automatically.
OKL: Payment Frequency for Automatic Insurance	Determines the default payment frequency for automatic insurance policy quotes.
OKL: Percent of Total Premium to Pay	Determines the percent of the total lessor premium due to a provider that is paid annually as a lump sum.
OKL: Pre-tax IIR Percentage Limit	Used by the pre-tax IIR program within the Internal Stream Generator API. Determines the maximum rate that can be calculated.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Pre-tax IRR Percentage Limit	Used by the pre-tax IRR program within the Internal Stream Generator API. Determines the maximum rate that can be calculated.
OKL: Pricing Enhancements Approval Process	Determines which application process to use when submitting approval requests for Sales Quotes and Lease Applications. Available options include None, Oracle Workflow and Oracle Approvals Management (AME).
OKL: Program Agreement Approval Process	Determines the approval process to approve a (vendor) Operating or Program Agreement.
OKL: Recent Number of Days	Used to query billing transactions on specific transaction dates. Sets the number of recent days of billing transactions that you want to appear.
OKL: Remarketing Inventory Organization	Inventory organization list of values. Select the inventory organization for remarketing items.
OKL: Reporting Product Asset Book	Reporting Asset book for multi-GAAP adjustments support. Select the Tax book associated with the Corporate book on the contract. Although it is possible to select any Tax book to be the Reporting Product Asset book, you must select the Tax book associated with the Corporate book on the contract for the asset to be entered correctly in the Reporting Product Asset book.
OKL: Script Launch on Interaction	Script launch on interaction.
OKL: Script Launch on UWQ Delivery	Script launch on UWQ delivery.
OKL: Scripting Installation	Determines whether Oracle Scripting is installed.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Small Balance Write-Off Tolerance	The contract termination process checks the value of this profile option and generates a small balance write-off if the amount not received from the lessee is less than or equal to the value in the profile option. If the balance amount due exceeds the value in the profile option, the contract is terminated without any write-off.
OKL: Split Asset Retirement Type	From the list of values, select the value to assign for retirement of split assets, for example, theft, casualty, or split.
OKL: Stream Generation Log Directory	Specifies the directory location where the log is located for storing details about the XML calls to the external stream generation software server.
OKL: Stream Generation Pricing Engine Name	Specifies the name of the pricing engine used for external stream generation software.
OKL: Stream Generation Time Out	Determines how long the stream generation program waits for the request to the external stream generation software to process before timing out the request.
OKL: Stream Generation URL for Pricing Engine	Specifies the URL of the pricing engine used for external stream generation software.
OKL: Streams for Booking Path	Determines the program used by the contract booking process for stream generation.
OKL: Subsidy Pool Approval Process	Enables subsidy pool approval process.
OKL: Subsidy Pool Global Access	If set to Yes, allows user to search for subsidy pools across operating units.
OKL: Third Party Task Group ID	Determines the task group ID used for sending tasks related to the insurance policy placement program.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Third Party Task Owner Group ID	Determines the task owner group ID used for sending tasks related to the insurance policy placement program.
OKL: Transportation Department Notification	User / Responsibility . From the list of values, select the user, employee, or responsibility to whom the Transportation Department notification should be sent.
OKL: Update Asset Return Rules	Determines whether the user is allowed to update asset return rules on the Structure tab of the Lease Center.
OKL: Update Billing Structure	Determines whether the user is allowed to update billing information on the Structure tab of the Lease Center.
OKL: Update Descriptive Flexfields from Lease Center	Enables updates to descriptive flexfields for contract header and lines in the Lease Center.
OKL: Update Evergreen Eligibility	Used to check whether Evergreen eligibility rules can be updated from the Lease Center.
OKL: Update Late Charges Rules	Determines whether the user is allowed to update late charge rules on the Structure tab of the Lease Center.
OKL: Update Misc Non Financial Information	Determines whether the user is allowed to update other information on the Structure tab of the Lease Center not covered by the other "OKL: Update" profile options.
OKL: Update Party Information	Determines whether the user is allowed to add, update, or delete guarantor, or add or update vendor on the Parties tab of the Lease Center.
OKL: Update Renewal Options	Determines whether the user is allowed to update renewal option rules on the Structure tab of the Lease Center.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Update Sales Tax Calculation Rules	Enables users to control updates to the Sales Tax Calculation rules. The default value of Null prevents the user from updating these rules.
OKL: Update Termination Option Rules	Determines whether the user is allowed to update termination option rules on the Structure tab of the Lease Center.
OKL: Use Account Generator Workflow	Yes / No list of values. Default set to No which uses the program logic to derive account codes for the account generator. Set value to Yes to derive the account codes through the OKL Account Generator workflow. You can modify this workflow to evaluate user-defined sources for account code derivation.
OKL: Vendor Access Sales Additional Info	Enables users to control vendor access to the additional information for sales objects.
OKL: Vendor Access Sales Objects	Enables users to control vendor access to the vendor sales objects created by lessor.
OKL: Vendor Approval Email From	Used by Oracle Advanced Collections to get approval from vendors associated to Lease Contracts, before sending Collections cases to Credits Bureaus or Other Third Party Collection Agencies.
OKL: Vendor Approval Email Subject	Used by Oracle Advanced Collections to get approval from vendors associated to Lease Contracts, before sending Collections cases to Credits Bureaus or Other Third Party Collection Agencies.
OKL: Vendor Approval Template	Used by Oracle Advanced Collections to get approval from vendors associated to Lease Contracts, before sending Collections cases to Credits Bureaus or Other Third Party Collection Agencies.
OKL: Vendor Contact Email	Determines the vendor to contact through email while sending the fulfillment documents.

Profile Option	Description
OKL: Vendor Notification Email From	Used by Oracle Advanced Collections to notify vendors associated to Lease Contracts, before sending Collections cases to Credits Bureaus or Other Third Party Collection Agencies.
OKL: Vendor Notification Email Subject	Used by Oracle Advanced Collections to notify vendors associated to Lease Contracts, before sending Collections cases to Credits Bureaus or Other Third Party Collection Agencies.
OKL: Vendor Notification Template	Used by Oracle Advanced Collections to notify vendors associated to Lease Contracts, before sending Collections cases to Credits Bureaus or Other Third Party Collection Agencies.
OKL: Waive Service Fee	Determines whether leasing agent has authority to waive service fee charges generated in the Lease Center.
OKL: Waive Service Fee Limit	Determines the maximum amount (in user's organization unit functional currency) of a service fee charge that a leasing agent can waive.
OKL: WRITE_CUSTOMER_TEMPLATE	Template is used while sending fulfillment requests to the customer from custom workflows invoked from the strategy engine.

B

Seed Data

This appendix covers the following topics:

- Stream Purposes
- Rules
- Formulas
- Workflows

Stream Purposes

The following table shows seeded Lease Management stream purposes and contains columns for:

- **Type** - indicates the types of templates in which the Purpose can be used by book class.

  1. **ALL** means the Purpose can be used in all stream generation templates with a product type of Financial Product.

  2. **LS** means the Purpose can be used in stream generation templates with a product type of Financial Product and Book Class of Operating Lease, Direct Financial Lease, or Sales Type Lease.

  3. **LN** means the Purpose can be used in stream generation templates with a product type of Financial Product and Book Class of Loan or Loan-Revolving.

  4. **INV** means the Purpose can be used in stream generation templates with a product type of Investor Product.

- **Used By**- **User** indicates the stream purpose is selected by the user during booking or other processes. **System** indicates the stream purpose is used by the system without being selected by the user.

- **Single or Multiple** - **Single** means only one stream type with this purpose can be added to the stream generation template. **Multiple** means one or more stream types with this purpose can be added to the stream generation template.

- **Mandatory**- indicates if the stream Purpose is mandatory on the type of stream generation template used.

- **Attributes**- indicates whether a stream Purpose is Taxable, Billable, and can Capitalize.

- **Primary or Dependent**- indicates whether a stream purpose is primary or dependent.

- **Depends On** - for dependent stream purposes only, indicates the primary stream purpose to which the stream is dependent.

Lease Management Seeded Stream Type Purposes

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Accounting	ALL, INV	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Accrued Fee Expense	ALL	System	Single for each expense	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Expense
Accrued Fee Income	ALL	System	Single for each fee payment type	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Fee Payment - All Types except Income Fee Payment
Actual Income Accrual	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Actual Property Tax	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Adjusted Property Tax	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Actual Property Tax
Advance Rent	ALL	System	Single for each rent	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Amortized Fee Expense	ALL	System	Single for each expense	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Expense
Amortized Fee Income	ALL	System	Single for each fee payment type	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Income Fee Payment
Billing Adjustment	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Book Depreciation	LS	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Cure	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Daily Interest - Interest	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Daily Interest - Principal	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Estimated Property Tax	ALL	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Excess Interest Paid	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Excess Loan Payment Paid	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Excess Principal Paid	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Expense	ALL	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = No Capitalize = Yes, No, or Null	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Federal Depreciation	LS	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Fee Payment	ALL	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Fee Renewal	LS	System	Single for each fee payment type	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Fee Payments - All Types
Float Factor Adjustment	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Funding	ALL	User	Multiple	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
General Loss Provision	ALL, INV	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Insurance Accrual Adjustment	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Insurance Adjustment	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Insurance Expense Accrual	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Insurance Income Accrual	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Insurance Payable	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Insurance Receivable	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Insurance Refund	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Interest Catchup	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Interest Income	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent, Fee Payment
Interest Payment	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent, Fee Payment

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Investor Contract Obligation Payable	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Disbursement Adjustment	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Evergreen Rent Payable	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Interest Income	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Interest Payable	INV	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Late Fee Payable	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Late Interest Payable	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Payable	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Investor Pre-tax Income	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Principal Payable	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Receivable	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Rent Buyback	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Rent Disbursement Basis	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Rent Payable	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Rental Accrual	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Residual Buyback	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Investor Residual Disbursement Basis	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Residual Payable	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Investor Variable Interest	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Late Fee	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Late Interest	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Lease Income	DF, ST	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Loan Payment	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent, Fee Payment
Pass-Through Expense Accrual	ALL	System	Single for each Pass-Through Fee Type	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Pass-Through Fee Payment

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Pass-Through Fee	ALL	User		No	Taxable = Yes Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Pass-Through Fee Renewal	LS	System	Single for each Pass-Through Fee Type	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Pass-Through Fee Payment
Pass-Through Renewal Rent	LS	System	Single for each Rent	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Pass-Through Revenue Accrual	ALL	System	Single for each Pass-Through Fee Type	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Pass-Through Fee Payment
Pass-Through Service	ALL	System		No	Taxable = Yes Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Pass-Through Service Expense Accrual	ALL	System	Single for each Pass-Through Service Payment	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Service Pass-Through
Pass-Through Service Renewal	LS	System	Single for each Pass-Through Service Payment	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Pass-Through Service Payment

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Pass-Through Service Revenue Accrual	ALL	System	Single for each Pass-Through Service Payment	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Pass-Through Service Payment
Pre-funding	ALL	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Pre-funding Interest Payment	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Principal Balance	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent, Fee Payment
Principal Catchup	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Principal Payment	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent, Fee Payment
PV Rent	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
PV Rent Securitized	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
PV RV	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Residual Value
PV RV Guaranteed	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Residual Value
PV RV Insured	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Residual Value
PV RV Securitized	INV	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
PV RV Unguaranteed	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Residual Value
PV RV Uninsured	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Residual Value
Quote Absorbed Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Quote Contract Obligation		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Contractual Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Discount		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Estimated Billing Adjustment		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Estimated Property Tax		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Expense Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Financed Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Quote General Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Income Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Miscellaneous		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Miscellaneous Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Pass-Through Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Per Diem	LN, LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Principal Balance		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Purchase Amount		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Quote Repurchase Sale Price	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Return Fee		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Rollover Incentive		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Service and Maintenance		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Termination Penalty		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Quote Unbilled Receivables		System	Single	No	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Renewal Property Tax	LS	System	Single for each Estimated Property Tax	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Estimated Property Tax

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Renewal Rent	LS	System	Single for each Rent	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Rent	ALL	User	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Rent Accrual	OP	System	Single for each Rent	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Repair Charge	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Residual Guaranteed	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Residual Value
Residual Value	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Residual Value Insurance Premium	LS	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Residual Value
Security Deposit	ALL	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Service Expense	ALL	System	Multiple	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Amortization Schedule	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Audit Letter	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Document Request	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Exchange Request	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - General	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Interest Conversion	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Invoice On Demand	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Service Fee - Invoice Reprint	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Payment Change	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Restructure Request	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Termination Request	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Transfer Request	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - Variable Rate Statement	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Fee - VAT Schedule	ALL	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Income	ALL	System	Single for each Service Payment	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Service Payment

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Service Payment	ALL	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Service Renewal	ALL	System	Single for each Service Payment	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Service Payment
Specific Loss Provision	ALL, INV	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
State Depreciation	LS	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Stip Loss Value	LS	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Subsidy	ALL	User	Multiple	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Subsidy Income	ALL	System	Single for each Subsidy	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Subsidy
Termination Value	LS	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Unscheduled Loan Payment	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Unscheduled Principal Payment	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent
Usage Payment	ALL	System	Single	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Variable Income Non-Accrual	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Variable Interest
Variable Interest	LN	User	Single	Yes	Taxable = Yes Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Primary	
Variable Interest Income	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Dependent	Variable Interest
Variable Interest Schedule	LN	System	Single	No	Taxable = No Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	
Variable Loan Payment	LN	System	Single	Yes	Taxable = Both Billable = Yes Capitalize = No	Dependent	Rent

Purpose Name	Type	Used By	Single or Multiple	Mandatory	Attributes	Primary or Dependent	Depends On
Vendor Residual Sharing	LS	User	Single	No	Taxable = Yes Billable = No Capitalize = No	Primary	

Rules

The Oracle Contracts rules architecture is part of the Oracle Contracts Core contract structure and works in combination with the contract header and lines. Rules are a structured presentation of contract terms and conditions. How the data relate to the contract determines whether the data are captured as a rule or in the header-line structure. In general, rules govern the operation or procedures and processes performed on contract headers, lines, or sub-lines.

For example, a rule can specify a number of days that should elapse between transaction events for a contract. This rule is checked by the process against the first transaction date before picking up the contract and processing it for the second transaction.

Rules comprise four basic components:

- Rule definition

- Rule group definition

- Rule values

- Rule group values

Once defined, the rule and rule group definitions are referenced when the rule and rule group values are assigned in the rule tables (OKC_RULES_B and OKC_RULE_GROUPS_B) that correspond to a contract, contract line, or sub-line.

A variety of sources can assign the rule and rule group values, including:

- Master Lease Agreement

- Vendor Agreements (Operating Agreements and Program Agreements)

- Product

- Contract Interface

- Profile Options

The following table lists all the seeded rules in Oracle Lease Management.

Seeded Rules Used in Oracle Lease Management

Rule Group	Rule Group Meaning	Rule Name	Rule Meaning	Rule Component	Description	Value Set or Source
AMTFOC	End of Term Purchase Option, Contract	AMTINV	Automat-ically Invoice for Fixed Purchase Option	RULE_INF ORMATIO N1	Automat-ically Process Fixed Purchase Option	Y/N
LABKCL	Book Class	LABKCL	Book Class	RULE_INF ORMATIO N1	Book Class	FND
LAEVEL	Evergreen Eligibility	LAEVEL	Evergreen Eligibility	RULE_INF ORMATIO N1	Eligible for Evergreen	Y/N
LAFCTG	Factoring	LAFCTG	Factoring	RULE_INF ORMATIO N1	Factoring Date	Date Value
LAFCTG	Factoring	LAFCTG	Factoring	RULE_INF ORMATIO N2	Factoring Percentage	Entered Value
LAFCTG	Factoring	LAFCTG	Factoring	RULE_INF ORMATIO N3	Factoring Discount Rate	Entered Value
LARNOP	Renewal Option	LAREND	Renewal Notice Days	RULE_INF ORMATIO N1	Renewal notice days	Entered Value
LARNOP	Renewal Option	LARNEW	Renewal Options	RULE_INF ORMATIO N1	Renewal option	FND

Rule Group	Rule Group Meaning	Rule Name	Rule Meaning	Rule Component	Description	Value Set or Source
LARNOP	Renewal Option	LARNEW	Renewal Options	RULE_INFORMATION2	Renewal amount	Entered Value
LASDEP	Security Deposit	LASDEP	Security Deposit	RULE_INFORMATION2	Sec Dep Held until maturity	Y/N
LASDEP	Security Deposit	LASDEP	Security Deposit	RULE_INFORMATION4	Net Sec Dep from Sale proceeds	Y/N
LASDEP	Security Deposit	LASDEP	Security Deposit	RULE_INFORMATION5	Sec Dep Held until date	Date Value
LATROP	Termination Options	LAEOTR	End of Term Options	RULE_INFORMATION1	End of term option	FND
LATROP	Termination Options	LAEOTR	End of Term Options	RULE_INFORMATION2	End of Term Amount	Entered Value
LATROP	Termination Options	LAMITR	Mid Term Options	RULE_INFORMATION1	Mid Term Option	FND
LATROP	Termination Options	LAMITR	Mid Term Options	RULE_INFORMATION2	Mid Term Amount	Entered Value
LATOWN	Tax Owner	LATOWN	Tax Owner	RULE_INFORMATION1	Tax Owner (for deal)	FND

Formulas

The following table lists formulas that are part of the Oracle Lease Management seed data:

Seeded Formulas in Oracle Lease Management

Formula Name	Description	Calculation	Parameters
LINE_OEC	Calculates the OEC	Price per unit * no of units	Contract id (mandatory) + Line id (optional)
CONTRACT_SUMOF _RENTS	N/A	N/A	N/A
LINE_RESIDUAL_V ALUE	Calculates the RV	Residual Value per unit	Contract id (mandatory) + Line id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_RESID UAL_VALUE	Calculates the RV	Residual Value for the contract	Contract id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_OEC	Contract Capitalized Amount	Sum of capitalized amount of all asset lines	Contract id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_TRADE IN	Sum of Trade Ins	Sum of all trade ins from financial asset lines	Contract id (mandatory)
LINE_TRADEIN	Trade in amount for a line	Trade in amount for the asset line	Contract id (mandatory) + Line id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_CAPRE DUCTION	Sum of Capital Reduction	Sum of capital reduction of all asset lines	Contract id (mandatory)
LINE_CAPREDUCTI ON	Capital Reduction of a line	Capital reduction amount for the asset line	Contract id (mandatory) + Line id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_FEESC APITALIZED	Sum of Capitalized Fees	Sum of capitalized fees lines	Contract id (mandatory)
LINE_FEESCAPITAL IZED	Capitalized Fees for line	Capitalized fees for the asset line	Contract id (mandatory) + Line id (mandatory)

Formula Name	Description	Calculation	Parameters
CONTRACT_CAP_AMNT	Total financed amount	OEC-Trade in - Cap Reduction + Cap Fees	Contract id (mandatory)
LINE_CAP_AMNT	Financed amount for line	OEC-Trade in - Cap Reduction + Cap Fees	Contract id (mandatory) + Line id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_AMNT_PREFNDED	Amount pre-funded	Sum of all approved requests for specific contract where type = prefunding	Contract id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_TOT_FNDED	Total funded amount	Sum of all approved requests for specific contract	Contract id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_TOT_DEBITS	Total negative fundings	Sum of all approved requests for specific contract where amount is negative (A/P debits)	Contract id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_TOT_CRDT_LMT	Total credit limit	Sum of all credit limit (contract line) for specific contract entity scs_code = 'CREDITLINE_CONTRACT	'Contract id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_CRDT_RMNG	Balance credit limit	Sum of all credit limit (contract line) for specific contract cs_code = 'CREDITLINE_CONTRACT' and subtract from Funding total	Contract id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_TOT_CRDT_NEW_LMT	New credit limit	Sum of all credit new limit (contract line) for specific contract scs_code = 'CREDITLINE_CONTRACT	'Contract id (mandatory)

Formula Name	Description	Calculation	Parameters
CONTRACT_TOT_C RDT_ADDN	Additional credit limit	Sum of all credit addition (contract line) for specific contract scs_code = 'CREDITLINE_CONT RACT	'Contract id (mandatory)
CONTRACT_TOT_C RDT_REDN	Reduction in credit limit	Sum of all credit addition (contract line) for specific contract scs_code = 'CREDITLINE_CONT RACT	'Contract id (mandatory)
AM_UNBILLED_RE CEIVABLES	Future Dues for a lease	Sum of unbilled rents (at present value) - advance rent	Contract id (mandatory)
AMCTOC	Principal Balance for a loan	Principal Balance	Contract id (mandatory)
AM_DISCOUNT_RA TE	Discount Rate	Original Capitalized Cost * (-0.1)	Contract id (mandatory)
AM_QUOTE_FEE	Quote Fee	Original Capitalized Cost * 0.1	Contract id (mandatory)
AM_RETURN_FEE	Return Fee	Original Capitalized Cost * 0.1	Contract id (mandatory)
AM_ROLLOVER_IN CENTIVE	Rollover Incentive	Original Capitalized Cost * 0.1	Contract id (mandatory)
AM_SECURITY_DEP OSIT	Security Deposit refundable	Balance Security Deposit Amount	Contract id (mandatory)
AM_TERMINATION _PENALTY	Termination Penalty	Original Capitalized Cost * 0.1	Contract id (mandatory)
AM_ESTIMATED_PR OPERTY_TAX	Estimated Property Tax	Estimated Property Tax	Contract id (mandatory)

Formula Name	Description	Calculation	Parameters
VARIABLE_INCOME_ACCRUAL	Variable Income Amount	Principal * Interest Rate * No of days to accrue / No of days in a year	Contract id (mandatory)
LP_NET_INVESTMENT_VALUE	Balance investment on contract	Operating Lease - Net Book Value, DF Lease - Net Investment Value and Loan - Principal Balance	Contract id (mandatory)
CS_ADVANCE_RENT	Advance Rent	Advance Rent	Contract id (mandatory)
CS_SECURITY_DEPOSIT	Security Deposit	Security Deposit	Contract id (mandatory)
CS_NET_INVESTMENT	Net Investment	Rent + Residual Value - Unearned Income	Contract id (mandatory)

Workflows

The following table lists workflows that are part of the Oracle Lease Management seed data:

Seeded Workflows in Oracle Lease Management

Workflow Name	File Name	Functional Area	Description
OKL CS Equipment Exchange.	OKLCSEQU.wft	Lease Center	This work flow is used in equipment exchange to exchange the equipment in the background after getting the necessary approvals.

Workflow Name	File Name	Functional Area	Description
OKL CS Transfer Assumption Request	OKLCSTRQ.wft	Lease Center	This work flow is used to carry out a Transfer and Assumption Request after receiving the appropriate approvals.
OKL CS Billing Correction Request.	OKLCSBCW.wft	Lease Center	This work flow is used for Billing Correction Request to notify an Administrator about any corrections.
OKL CS Billing Refund Request.	OKLCSBRW.wft	Lease Center	This work flow is used for Billing Refund Request to notify an Administrator about any Refunds.
OKL CS Convert Interest Type	OKLCSCIT.wft	Lease Center	This work flow is used to notify an Administrator about any changes in the interest types.
OKL CS Contract Lease Renewal.	OKLCSKLR.wft	Lease Center	This work flow is used for lease renewals.

Workflow Name	File Name	Functional Area	Description
OKL Stream Generation - Outbound	OKLSTOUT.wft	Authoring	Workflow to start an out-bound transaction with Pricing Engine for Streams Generation. Steps: **1.** Receive raised Business Event to send out bound xml message. **2.** Call ECX api to check for validity of the generated document. **3.** Report Error if applicable. **4.** Call ECX API to send the document.
OKL Stream Generation - Inbound	OKLSTIN.wft	Authoring	Workflow to start an in-bound transaction coming from Pricing Engine for Streams Generation. Steps: **1.** Capture the business event for Inbound xml message. **2.** Process Stream Results.
OKL - IN Gather Third Party Insurance Information	OKLININF.wft	Authoring	To gather third-party information when customer fails to provide insurance proof, and the lessor cannot sell insurance.
Lease Account Generator	OKLFLXWF.wft	Accounting	You can use this workflow to generate account combinations instead of the seeded sources.
Approve Contract Portfolio	OKLAMATK.wft	Asset Management	This workflow routes the contract portfolio for approval.

Workflow Name	File Name	Functional Area	Description
Notify Contract Portfolio Execution	OKLAMCPE.wft	Asset Management	This workflow notifies the remarketer for the contract portfolio execution.
Approve Restructure	OKLAMRQT.wft	Asset Management	This workflow routes the restructure for approval.
Approve Gain / Loss	OKLAMGAL.wft	Asset Management	This workflow routes the gain / loss on termination for approval.
Approve Partial Quote	OKLAMPAR.wft	Asset Management	This workflow routes partial quotes for approval.
Shipping Instructions	OKLAMNSI.wft	Asset Management	This workflow is used to inform the shipping details for an asset.
Notify Internal Transport Department	OKLAMNTD.wft	Asset Management	This workflow is used to inform the internal transport department the shipping details for an asset.
Send Quote	OKLAMNQT.wft	Asset Management	This workflow is used to send a quote.
Repurchase Acceptance	OKLAMRAC.wft	Asset Management	This workflow informs user(s) of the acceptance of a repurchase quote.
Termination Quote Acceptance	OKLAMPPT.wft	Asset Management	This workflow informs user(s) of the acceptance of a termination quote.

Workflow Name	File Name	Functional Area	Description
Restructure Quote Acceptance	OKLAMRQT.wft	Asset Management	This workflow informs user(s) of the acceptance of a restructure quote.
Notify Remarketer	OKLAMNRM.wft	Asset Management	This workflow informs the remarketing team of a new asset assignment
Notify Collections	OKLAMNCO.wft	Asset Management	This workflow informs the collections agent of updates on returns in the case of a repossession.
Notify Repossession Agent	OKLAMNRA.wft	Asset Management	This workflow informs the external repossession agent of a new repossession request.
Notify Provider	OKLAMNPR.wft	Asset Management	This workflow informs the provider of service and/or maintenance of the asset return.
Asset Repair	OKLAMAAR.wft	Asset Management	This workflow routes asset repair requests for approval.
Request Title Return	OKLAMRTR.wft	Asset Management	This workflow requests the 3rd party title holder to return the title on the expiration of the contract.

Workflow Name	File Name	Functional Area	Description
Remarketing Order Cycle	OKLAMROM.wft	Asset Management	This workflow defines the order cycle in Order Management for remarketed assets.
Credit Application Request	OKLSOCAR.wft	Sales and Origination	Notifies the Lease Credit Analyst of credit request recommendations from Oracle Credit Management.

C

FND Lookup Types

This appendix covers the following topics:

- About the Lookup Tables
- OKL Lookup Types—A
- OKL Lookup Types—B through C
- OKL Lookup Types—D through H
- OKL Lookup Types—I through K
- OKL Lookup Types—L through P
- OKL Lookup Types—Q through R
- OKL Lookup Types—S
- OKL Lookup Types—T through Z

About the Lookup Tables

Depending on the access level, you can change, add, or delete values for some fields in Oracle Lease Management. The following tables show you:

- **Lookup Type**: Name of the lookup type

- **Access Level**: Three access levels are:

    - **User**: Field values that you can add or delete.

    - **Extensible**: Field values that you can add.

    - **System**: Field values that you cannot add or delete.

- **Navigation Path**: Location of field in the Oracle Lease Management client.

- **Page or Window Name**: Title of browser's page or window where you can find the

field.

- **UI Field Label**: The name of the field in the Oracle Lease Management client application.

For specific information on how to access, add, or delete lookup fields, see:

- *Oracle CRM Application Foundation User Guide*

- *Oracle CRM Application Foundation Implementation Guide*

OKL Lookup Types—A

The following table contains the OKL_ lookup types with names that follow OKL_ that start with the letter **A**, such as *OKL_ACCEPTANCE_METHOD*.

OKL Lookup Types—A

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_ACCEP TANCE_MET HOD	User	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail	Contract Detail	Acceptance Method	Meaning
OKL_ACCO UNTING_EV ENT_STATU S	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_ACCO UNTING_EV ENT_TYPE	System	Processing > Correct Accounting Entries	Accounting Entries	Event Type	Meaning
OKL_ACCR UAL_RULE_ LOGICAL_O P	System	Setup > Financials > Accrual Rules	Create Accrual Rules	Logical Operator	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_ACCR UAL_RULE_ OPERAND	System	Setup > Financials > Accrual Rules	Create Accrual Rules	Operands	Meaning
OKL_ACCR UAL_RULE_ OPERATOR	System	Setup > Financials > Accrual Rules	Create Accrual Rules	Relational Operator	Meaning
OKL_ACCT_ BAL_FORM AT	System	Processing > Account Balances	Account Balances	Format	Meaning
OKL_ACC_D IST_POSTED	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_ACC_G EN_SOURCE _TABLE	Extensible	Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Create Account Generator Source	Source Table	Meaning
OKL_ADJ_F REQUENCY	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Terms and Conditions > Interest Rate	Terms and Conditions	Adjustment Frequency	Meaning
OKL_ADVA NCE_ARREA RS	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_AE_LI NE_TYPE	Extensible	Setup > Accounting > Accounting Template	Accounting Template Lines Details	Account Generator Rule	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
		Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Rules	Account Generator Rules Details	Account Generator Rule	Meaning
		Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Create Account Generator Sources	Account Generator Rule	Meaning
		Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Account Generator Sources	Account Generator Rule	Meaning
OKL_APPLY _ROUNDIN G_DIFF	System	Setup > Accounting > Accounting Options	Accounting Options Detail	Apply Rounding Difference	Meaning
OKL_AP_DIS TR_LINE_TY PE	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_AP_IN VOICE_CAT EGORY	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_AP_PA YMENT_ME THOD	Extensible	Origination > Funding > Funding Request	Create Funding Request	Payment Method	Meaning
OKL_AP_VE NDOR_SITES _V	Extensible	Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Create Account Generator Source	Select Column	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_AR_SIT E_USES_V	Extensible	Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Create Account Generator Source	Select Column	Meaning
OKL_ASSET_ CNDN_LINE _STATUS	System	Asset Management > Asset Returns > Asset Condition > Asset Conditions Lines	Asset Condition Line Details	Status	Meaning
OKL_ASSET_ CONDITION	Extensible	Asset Management > Asset Returns > Asset Condition	Asset Condition Details	Asset Condition	Description
OKL_ASSET_ RETURN_ST ATUS	Extensible	Asset Management > Asset Returns	Asset Return Details	Status	Meaning
OKL_ASSET_ RETURN_TY PE	System	Asset Management > Asset Returns	Asset Return Details	Type	Meaning
OKL_ASSET_ TRACK_STR ATEGIES	Extensible	Asset Management > Contract Portfolios	Contract Portfolios	Strategy	Meaning

OKL Lookup Types—B through C

The following table contains the OKL_ lookup types with names that follow **OKL_** that

start with the letters **B** through **C**, such as **OKL_BATCH_RULES_SEARCH_TYPE**.

OKL Lookup Types—B through C

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_BATCH _RULES_SEA RCH_TYPE	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_BOOK_ CLASS	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail	Contract Detail	Book Classification	Meaning
OKL_BOOK_ CLASS	System	Sales > Quotes > Payments Plan > Create Plan	Create Payment Plan	Book Class	Meaning
OKL_BOOK_ CLASS	System	Sales > Quotes > Payments Plan > Details	Payment Plan Details	Book Class	Meaning
OKL_CALC_ METHOD	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Terms and Conditions > Interest Rate	Terms and Conditions	Method of Calculation	Meaning
OKL_CHECK LIST_TYPE	System	Setup > Checklist > Create Checklist	Create Checklist	Type	Meaning
OKL_CHKLS T_SRCH_OP TIONS	System	Setup > Checklist	Checklists	Checklist	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_CLAIM _STATUS	User	Insurance > Claim Summary > Create Insurance Claim	Create Lease, Optional Insurance Claim	Claim Status	Meaning
OKL_CLAIM _TYPE	System	Insurance > Claim Summary > Create Insurance Claim	Create Lease, Optional Insurance Claim	Claim Type	Meaning
OKL_CONV ERSION_ME THOD	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Terms and Conditions > Interest Rate	Terms and Conditions	Conversion Method	Meaning
OKL_CONV ERT_TYPE	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Terms and Conditions > Interest Rate	Terms and Conditions	Convert Type	Meaning
OKL_COST_ TYPE	Extensible	Asset Management > Asset Returns > Fees	Fees	Type	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_CREDIT_NATURE	System	Origination > Credit > Credit Lines > Credit Line Details > Credit Limit	Credit Limit	Nature	Meaning
OKL_CRITERION_DATATYPE	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_CSH_RLS_SEARCH_TYPE	Extensible	Setup > Cash > Search Rules	Search Rules	Search Type	Meaning
OKL_CSH_RLS_SEARCH_TYPE_DB	Extensible	Setup > Cash > Search Rules > Create Search Rule	Create Search Rules	Search Type	Meaning
OKL_CSH_RLS_SETUP	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_CS_DEFAULT_TAB	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Meaning
OKL_CURE_ACTIONS	User	Receivables > Refund > Vendor Cures > Refund > Details	History	Action	Meaning
OKL_CURE_RECON_SCR_OPTIONS	User	Receivables > Vendor Cure Requests > Reconcile	Vendor Cures - Reconciliation	Request Type	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_CURE_ REFUND_OP TIONS	User	Receivables > Refund > Vendor Cure Summary > Refund	Vendor Cures - Refund	Select	Meaning
OKL_CURE_ REFUND_ST ATUS	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_CURE_ REQUEST_A PPROVE_ST ATU	User	Receivables > Cure	Vendor Cures	Status	Meaning
OKL_CURE_ REQUEST_T YPE	User	Receivables > Create Request > Contract Search	Vendor Cures - Add Contracts	Request Type	Meaning
OKL_CURE_ TYPE	User	Internal Status used by Concurrent Process	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_CUSTO MER_STATU S	Extensible	VSS > Customers > Customers	Customers	Status	Meaning

OKL Lookup Types—D through H

The following table contains the OKL_ lookup types with names that follow OKL_ that start with the letters **D** through **H**, such as **OKL_DAMAGE_TYPE**.

OKL Lookup Types—D through H

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_DAMA GE_TYPE	Extensible	Asset Management > Asset Returns > Asset Condition	Create Asset Condition Line	Damage Type	Meaning
OKL_DATA_ TYPE	Extensible	Setup > Operational > Contexts > Context Parameters > Create Context Parameter	Create Context Parameter	Data Type	Meaning
		Setup > Operational > Functions > Function Parameters > Create Function Parameter	Create Function Parameter	Data Type	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_DISBU RSEMENT_B ASIS	System	1. Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Lines > Service > Create Service > Passthrough 2. Origination Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Lines > Fees > Create Fee > Passthrough	Passthrough	Passthrough Basis Code	Meaning
OKL_EOT_O PTION	Extensible	Origination > Contracts > Terms and Conditions > Purchase Option	Terms and Conditions	Purchase Option Type	Meaning
OKL_EOT_R ENEW	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Terms and Conditions > Renewal Options	Terms and Conditions	Renewal Option	Meaning
OKL_FACTO RING_CODE	Extensible	Setup > Accounting > Accounting Template	Create Accounting Template	Factoring Code	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_FACTO RING_SYND ICATION	System	Setup > Accounting > Accounting Template	Create Accounting Template	Factoring or Syndication	Meaning
OKL_FA_CA TEGORY_BO OKS	User	Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Create Account Generator Source	Select Column	Meaning
OKL_FEE_TY PES	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract Lines > Fees > Create Fee	Create Fee	Fee Type	Meaning
OKL_FILING _STATUS	User	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Terms and Conditions > Filing	Filing	Status	Meaning
OKL_FILING _TYPE	User	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Terms and Conditions > Filing	Filing	Lien Type, Title Type	Meaning
OKL_FINAN CIALS_SYST EM_PARAM ETE	Extensible	Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Create Account Generator Source	Select Column	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_FORMULA_TYPE	Extensible	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_FREQUENCY	Extensible	Sales Quote > Details	Frequency	Meaning	Meaning
OKL_FUNCTION_PMR_TYPE	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_FUNCTION_TYPE	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_FUNDING_CATEGORY	Not used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_FUNDING_TYPE	System	Origination > Funding > Funding Request	Create Funding Request	Funding Type	Meaning
OKL_GUARANTEE_TYPE	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Parties > Create Party > Party Details	Party Details	Guarantee Type	Meaning
OKL_GUARANTOR_TYPE	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Parties > Create Party > Party Details	Party Details	Guarantor Type	Meaning

OKL Lookup Types—I through K

The following table contains the OKL_ lookup types with names that follow OKL_ that start with the letters **I** through **K**, such as **OKL_IDX_FREQUENCY**.

OKL Lookup Types—I through K

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_IDX_FREQUENCY	Extensible	Setup > Financials > Interest Rates	Create Interest Rate	Index Frequency	Meaning
OKL_IDX_TYPE	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_INS_ACTIVE_ALL	Extensible	Setup > Insurance Asset Classes	Insurance Asset Classes	View	Meaning
OKL_INS_ACTIVE_ALL	Extensible	Setup > Insurance Rankings	Insurance Rankings	View	Meaning
OKL_INS_ACTIVE_ALL	Extensible	Setup > Insurance Rates	Insurance Rates	View	Meaning
OKL_INS_ACTIVE_ALL	Extensible	Setup > Insurance Restrictions	Insurance Restrictions	View	Meaning
OKL_INS_CANCEL_REASON	User	Insurance	Insurance Tab	Cancellation Reason	Meaning
OKL_INS_PAYMENT_FREQUENCY	System	Insurance > Create Insurance Lease Quote	Create Insurance Lease Quote	Payment Frequency	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_INS_PA YMENT_FRE QUENCY	System	Insurance > Create Insurance Optional Quote	Create Insurance Optional Quote	Payment Frequency	Meaning
OKL_INS_PA YMENT_FRE QUENCY	System	Origination > Contracts > Lines > Insurance > Create Lease Quote	Create Lease Quote	Payment Frequency	Meaning
OKL_INS_PA YMENT_FRE QUENCY	System	Origination > Contracts > Lines > Insurance > Create Optional Quote	Create Optional Quote	Payment Frequency	Meaning
OKL_INS_Q UOTE_STAT US	Extensible	Origination > Contracts > Lines > Insurance	Insurance Quotes	View	Meaning
OKL_INSUR ANCE_ASSE T_CLASS	User	Setup > Insurance Asset Classes	Insurance Asset Classes	Insurance Class	Meaning
OKL_INSUR ANCE_ASSE T_CLASS	User	Setup > Insurance Asset Classes > Create Insurance Asset Class	Create Insurance Asset Class	Insurance Class	Meaning
OKL_INSUR ANCE_ASSE T_CLASS	User	Setup > Insurance Rate > Create Insurance Rate	Create Insurance Rate	Insurance Asset Class	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_INSURANCE_POLICY_TYPE	User	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used
OKL_INSURANCE_PRODUCT_TYPE	System	Setup > Insurance Products	Insurance Products	Insurance Type	Meaning
OKL_INSURANCE_PRODUCT_TYPE	System	Setup > Insurance Products > Create Insurance Product	Create Insurance Product	Insurance Type	Meaning
OKL_INSURANCE_STATUS	System	Used in all Insurance Policies page (Display Only)	Not applicable	Status	Meaning
OKL_INSURANCE_TYPE	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_INTENT_TYPE	System	Setup > Products > Options > Option Values > Option Value Rules	Option Value Rules	Action	Meaning
OKL_INTPMT_TYPE	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_INV_RECEIVABLES_LINE_TYPE	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_JTF_RS _SALESREPS _MO_V	User	Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Create Account Generator Source	Select Column	Meaning

OKL Lookup Types—L through P

The following table contains the OKL_ lookup types with names that follow OKL_ that start with the letters **L** through **P**, such as **OKL_LATE_CHRG_FIXED_YN**.

OKL Lookup Types—L through P

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_LATE_ CHRG_FIXE D_YN	Extensible	Setup > Receivables > Late Policies > Create Late Policy	Create Late Policy	Late Charge Type	Meaning
OKL_LATE_I NT_FIXED_Y N	Extensible	Setup > Receivables > Late Policies > Create Late Policy	Create Late Policy	Rate Type	Meaning
OKL_LATE_ POLICY_EXE MPT_YN	Extensible	Setup > Receivables > Late Policies > Create Late Policy	Exempt Late Policy	Exempt YN	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_LATE_POLICY_TYPE_CODE	Extensible	Setup > Receivables > Late Policies > Create Late Policy	Create Late Policy	Late Policy Type	Meaning
OKL_LOSS_TYPE	User	Insurance > Claim Summary > Create Insurance Claim	Create Lease, Optional Insurance Claim	Claim Loss Type	Meaning
OKL_MASS_RBK_CRITERIA	System	Processing > Mass Rebook > New Request	Mass Rebook	Criteria	Meaning
OKL_MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_VL	Extensible	Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Create Account Generator Source	Select Column	Meaning
OKL_OPERAND_TYPE	System	Setup > Operational > Operands > Create Operand	Create Operand	Operand Type	Meaning
OKL_OPTION_VALUE_RULE_FLAG	System	Setup > Products > Options > Option Values > Option Value Rules > Create Option Value Rule	Create Option Value Rule	Intent	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_PAREN THESIS	System	Setup > Financials > Accrual Rules	Create Accrual Rules	Left parenthesis and right parenthesis	Meaning
OKL_PAYAB LES_INVOIC E_TYPE	Extensible	Receivables > Disbursement s > Manual Disbursement s > Create Manual Disbursement s	Create Manual Disbursement s	Invoice Type	Meaning
OKL_PAYM ENT_METH ODS	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_PAYM ENT_PLAN_ STATUS	Extensible	Sales > Quotes > Payment Plans	Payment Plan	Status	Meaning
OKL_PAYM ENT_PLAN_ STATUS	Extensible	Sales > Quotes > Payment Plans > Details	Payment Plan Details	Status	Meaning
OKL_PAYM ENT_STRUC TURES	Extensible	Sales > Quotes > Payment Plans > Create Plan	Create Payment Plan	Payment Structure	Meaning
OKL_PAYM ENT_STRUC TURES	Extensible	Sales > Quotes > Payment Plans > Details	Payment Plan Details	Payment Structure	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_PERIOD_STATUS	System	Setup > Accounting > Accounting Periods	Accounting Period Status	Status	Meaning
OKL_POOL_TRANSACTION_REASON	System	Investor > Pools > Pool Transactions	Pool Transactions	Transaction Reason	Meaning
OKL_POOL_TRANSACTION_TYPE	System	Investor > Pools > Pool Transactions	Pool Transactions	Transaction Type	Meaning
OKL_POSTING_DETAIL	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_PRICE_PARAMS_DYP_CODE	Extensible	Setup > Pricing > Pricing Parameters > Create Pricing Parameter	Create Pricing Parameter	Data Type	Meaning
OKL_PRICE_PARAMS_SPS_CODE	Extensible	Setup > Pricing > Pricing Parameters > Create Pricing Parameter	Create Pricing Parameter	Level	Meaning
OKL_PRICING_METHOD	Extensible	Sales > Quotes > Payments Plan > Create Plan	Create Payment Plan	Pricing Method	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_PRICING_METHOD	Extensible	Sales > Quotes > Payments Plan > Details	Payment Plan Details	Pricing Method	Meaning
OKL_PRINCIPAL_INTEREST	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_PROCESSES	Extensible	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_PROPERTY_CLASS_OPTIONS	User	Contract > Lines > Assets > Real Estate button	Real Estate	Property Class	Meaning

OKL Lookup Types—Q through R

The following table contains the OKL_ lookup types with names that follow OKL_ that start with the letters **Q** through **R**, such as **OKL_QUOTE_PARTY_TYPE**.

OKL Lookup Types—Q through R

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_QUOTE_PARTY_TYPE	System	Contracts > Terms and Conditions > Termination Quote Process	Terms and Conditions	Recipient	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_QUOTE _PRORATE_ OPTION_TY PE	System	Contracts > Terms and Conditions > Early Termination Quote Calculation	Terms and Conditions	Prorate	Meaning
OKL_QUOTE _REASON	Extensible	Asset Management > Quotes > Create Quote	Create Termination Quote	Quote Reason	Description
OKL_QUOTE _RULE_OPTI ON_TYPE	System	Contracts > Terms and Conditions > Termination Quote Process	Terms and Conditions	Net Quote Option	Meaning
OKL_QUOTE _STATUS	System	Asset Management > Quotes	Termination Quote Details	Status	Meaning
OKL_QUOTE _TYPE	Extensible	Asset Management > Quotes	Create Termination Quote	Quote Type	Meaning
OKL_RA_CU ST_TRX_TYP ES	Extensible	Setup > Accounting > Account Generator Sources	Create Account Generator Source	Select Column	Meaning
OKL_RE_DE ALTYPE	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_REBOO K_REASON	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Revisions	Revisions	Reason	Meaning
OKL_REFUN D_REASON	User	Lease Center > Account tab > Billing refund Request > Refund Reason	Billing Refund Request	Refund Reason	Meaning
OKL_REJECT ION_REASO N	Extensible	Lease Center > Transfer & Assumption > Cancel request	Transfer & Assumption	Rejection Reason	Meaning
OKL_REMIT _BASIS	System	Investor > Investor Agreement> Investors	Investor	Remittance Occurs After	Meaning
OKL_REQUE ST_STATUS	System	Lease Center > Equipment Exchange, Transfer & Assumption page, Lease Renewals > Request Status	Equipment Exchange, Transfer & Assumption page, Lease Renewals	Request Status	Meaning
OKL_REQUE ST_TYPE	System	Lease Center > Request Tab > Request Type	Request Tab	Request Type	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_RESID UAL_CODE	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Lines > Assets > Create Asset	Asset	Guarantor	Meaning
OKL_ROUN DING_RULE	System	Setup > Accounting > Accounting Options	Accounting Options Detail	Rounding Rule	Meaning

OKL Lookup Types—S

The following table contains the OKL_ lookup types with names that follow OKL_ that start with the letter **S**, such as **OKL_SERVICE_BY**.

OKL Lookup Types—S

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_SEC_P AYMENT_B ASIS	System	Investor > Investor Agreements > Terms and Conditions > Disbursement Setup	Terms and Conditions	Payment Basis	Meaning
OKL_SERVIC E_BY	System	Investor > Investor Agreement > Investors	Investor	Service By	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_SERVICE_FEES	System	Lease Center > Send Document button > Service fees page > Charge Service Fee Name	Charge Service Fee	Name	Meaning
OKL_SFE_TYPE	Extensible	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_SIF_STATUS	Extensible	Origination > Contracts > Booking > Streams > Generate Streams	Streams	Request Status	Meaning
OKL_SIL_TYPE	Extensible	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_SIY_TYPE	Extensible	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_SOURCE_PK_COLUMN	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_SOURCE_SELECT_COLUMN	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_SOURCE_TABLE	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_SRCH_STRM_TYPS_ADDYN	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_SRCH_STRM_TYPS_ADDYN_FLAG	Extensible	Setup > Cash > Search Rules > Create Search Rule > Create	Create Combination	Plus, Minus	Meaning
OKL_STREAM_ACTIVITY	Extensible	Financials > Inquiry > Streams	Streams	Status	Meaning
OKL_STREAM_GENERATOR	Extensible	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_STREAM_TYPE_CLASS	System	Setup > Pricing > Stream Types > Create Stream Type	Create Stream Type	Class	Meaning
OKL_STREAM_TYPE_SUBCLASS	System	Setup > Pricing > Stream Types > Create Stream Type	Create Stream Type	Subclass	Meaning
OKL_STREAM_TYPE_SCOPE	System	Setup > Pricing > Stream Types > Create Stream Type	Create Stream Type	Scope	Meaning
OKL_STRM_G_ORIGINATION_PROCESS	Extensible	Origination > Contracts > Booking > Streams > Generate Streams	Streams	Contract Process	Meaning
OKL_STRMGEN_PATHS	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_STY_ALLOCATION_BASIS	System	Setup > Pricing > Stream Types > Create Stream Type	Create Stream Type	Allocation Basis	Meaning
OKL_STY_CUSTOMIZATION_LEVEL	System	Setup > Pricing > Stream Types > Create Stream Type	Create Stream Type	Access Level	Meaning
OKL_SUB_CRITERIA_SRCH	System	Setup > Pricing > Subsidy > Subsidy Application	Subsidy Criteria	Subsidy Criteria	Meaning
OKL_SUBACCT_METHOD	System	Setup > Pricing > Subsidy > Subsidy > Create Subsidy	Create Subsidy	Accounting Method	Meaning
OKL_SUBCALC_BASIS	System	Setup > Pricing > Subsidy > Subsidy > Create Subsidy	Create Subsidy	Basis	Meaning
OKL_SUBRCPT_METHOD	System	Setup > Pricing > Subsidy > Subsidy > Create Subsidy	Create Subsidy	Net on Funding	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_SUBRF ND_BASIS	System	Setup > Pricing > Subsidy > Subsidy > Create Subsidy	Create Subsidy	Refund Basis	Meaning
OKL_SUBSID Y_SRCH_OP TNS	System	Setup > Pricing > Subsidy > Subsidy	Subsidies	Subsidies	Meaning
OKL_SYNDI CATION_CO DE	Extensible	Setup > Accounting > Accounting Template	Create Accounting Template	Syndication Code	Meaning

OKL Lookup Types—T through Z

The following table contains the OKL_ lookup types with names that follow OKL_ that start with the letters **T** through **Z**, such as **OKL_TAX_OWNER**.

OKL Lookup Types—T through Z

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_TAX_O WNER	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail	Contract Detail	Tax Owner	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_TAX_O WNER	System	Sales > Quotes > Payments Plan > Create Plan	Create Payment Plan	Tax Owner	Meaning
OKL_TAX_O WNER	System	Sales > Quotes > Payments Plan > Details	Payment Plan Details	Tax Owner	Meaning
OKL_TAX_R EPORTING	Not Used	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_TC_LI NKS	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_TCL_T YPE	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_TCN_T YPE	System	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
OKL_TODO_ CREDIT_CH KLST	Extensible	Setup > Checklist > Checklist Contents	Checklist Contents	Item Code	Meaning
OKL_TODO_ FUNDING_C HKLST	Extensible	Setup > Checklist > Checklist Contents	Checklist Contents	Item Code	Meaning
OKL_TRANS _HEADER_T YPE	System	For Internal Use Only	For Internal Use Only	For Internal Use Only	Meaning
OKL_TRANS _LINE_TYPE	System	For Internal Use Only	For Internal Use Only	For Internal Use Only	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_TRANS ACTION_ST ATUS	Extensible	Various areas use this lookup for creating transactions. Accounting area has seeded the lookup type, but respective transaction areas include seeded values. Possible values for this lookup type are: Accrued , Approved, Canceled, Closed, Entered.	Various	Not applicable	Meaning
OKL_TRANS ACTION_TY PE_CATEGO RY	System	Setup > Accounting > Transaction Types	Create Transaction Types	Transaction Category	Meaning
OKL_TRANS ACTION_TY PE_CLASS	System	Setup > Accounting > Transaction Types	Create Transaction Types	Transaction Class	Meaning
OKL_UNIVE RSAL_SEAR CH	User	Lease Center Search > Advanced Search > Item (LOV)	Lease Center Search	Search Criteria	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_VAR_INTCALC	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Terms and Conditions > Interest Rate	Terms and Conditions	Interest Method	Meaning
OKL_VARIABLE_METHOD	System	Origination > Contracts > Contract > Contract Detail; then Terms and Conditions > Interest Rate	Terms and Conditions	Variable Method	Meaning
OKL_VIEW_ACC_SOURCES	System	Financials > Inquiry > Transactions	View Transactions	Source	Meaning
OKL_VP_TERMINATION_REASON	System	For Internal Use Only	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Not applicable
OKL_VSS_CONTRACT_STATUS	Extensible	VSS > Contracts > Contracts	Contracts	Status	Meaning
OKL_VSS_OBJECT_TYPE	Extensible	VSS > Home > My List	My List	Filter By	Meaning
OKL_VSS_QUOTE_TYPE	User	VSS > Contracts > Quotes	Quotes	Quote Type	Meaning

Lookup Type	Access Level: User, Extensible, System	OKL Client Navigation Path	Page or Window Name	UI Field Label	Label Uses Meaning or Description
OKL_WARR ANT_SHARE _TYPE	Extensible	Origination > Credit > Credit Lines > Credit Line Details > Warrants	Warrants	Type	Meaning
OKL_WARR ANT_TYPE	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not applicable
OKL_YES_N O	User	Setup > Products > Products > Product Option	Product Option	Required	Meaning
OKL_YES_N O	User	Setup > Products > Products > Product Stream Type	Product Stream Type	Accrue	Meaning

D

Formula Engine

This appendix covers the following topics:

- About the Formula Engine
- Terminology
- Examples of Formulas
- Commission Formula Example
- Net Investment Value Formula Example
- General Setup Steps for a Formula with Operand Functions
- Write the Source PL/SQL Function To Use in a Formula

About the Formula Engine

The Formula Engine is a tool that lets you define custom formulas and execute them.

Many different parts of Oracle Lease Management use formulas. Formulas are always relevant to either a particular contract or an individual line on a contract.

Examples of formulas that Oracle Lease Management uses include asset residual, contract original equipment cost, and contract capitalized fees.

> **Note:** All formulas return values in the functional currency associated with the set of books.

Simplified Formula Engine Architecture
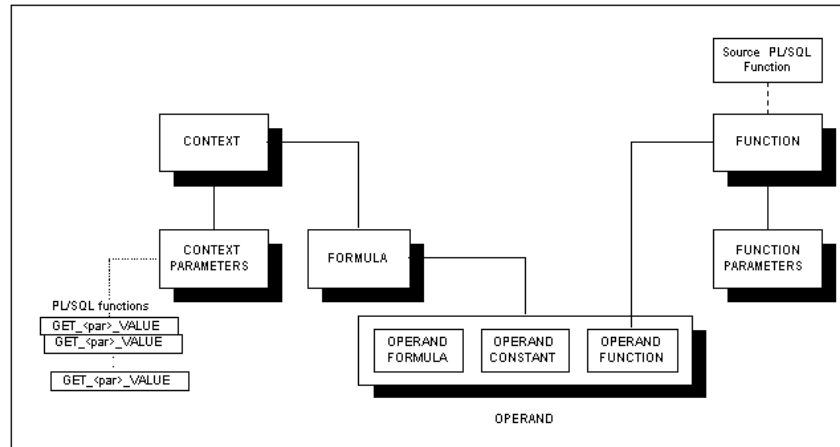
Terminology

The main parts of the Formula Engine are:

- **PL/SQL:** PL/SQL is Oracle's Procedural Language extension to SQL. The PL/SQL language includes object oriented programming techniques such as encapsulation, function overloading, and information hiding. PL/SQL is commonly used to write data centric programs to manipulate data in an Oracle database.

- **PARAMETER:** A seeded variable whose value is calculated and passed to a function. Used by functions and context groups.

- **FORMULA:** A combination of arithmetic symbols and operands that evaluates to a numeric value.

  The symbols you can use in a formula are: **+ - * / ( )**

- **OPERAND:** An object that can take part in arithmetic operations. An operand derives its value either from another formula, an expression or a function.

- **FUNCTION:** The registration of a source PL/SQL function, which returns a numeric value. The source PL/SQL function must have been previously created in the database. A function can accept parameters.

- **FUNCTION PARAMETER:** An object that passes a value to the function.

- **CONTEXT:** A grouping mechanism that allows for the efficient evaluation and passing of parameters to functions in formulas. Every formula executes within a context.

- **CONTEXT PARAMETER:** A variable of a context whose value is calculated and passed to a function when a formula is executed that contains the function.

Examples of Formulas

The following sections show examples of formulas:

- Commission Formula Example

- Net Investment Value Formula Example

- Write the Source PL/SQL Function To Use in a Formula

Commission Formula Example

The main topics in this section are:

- Functions and Parameters for the Commission Formula

- Context and Context Parameters

- Context Parameters for the Commission Formula

- How a Formula Executes

You can configure Context Groups and Function parameters as described in the next section when seeded parameters are available. Currently no seeded parameters are available.

To understand how the Formula Engine works, consider a sample formula to calculate sales commissions.

> **Note:** This example is not oriented to specific lease or loan transactions, but illustrates some of the features of the Formula Engine, especially the concepts of context and context parameters.

The Commission formula is:

```
Commission := (Delta Amount) * 0.05 + Group Bonus
```

This formula calculates a sales agent's commission as 5% of the difference between bookings and cancellations plus some group bonus.

The Commission formula consists of three operands:

- **Delta Amount**, which is another formula:

```
Delta Amount: = Ordered Amount - Canceled Amount
```

This formula consists of two operands: **Ordered Amount** and **Canceled Amount**. Both of these operands are functions.

- The **constant value** 0.05.

- **Group Bonus**, which is a function.

The essential concepts that this illustrates are:

- **Formulas** consist of **operands** + **symbols.**

- **Operands** derive their values from **formulas**, **constants** or **functions**.

Functions and Parameters for the Commission Formula

Functions accept input parameters, which can either be constants or variables.

There can be any number of function parameters.

Assume that the variable parameters for the Commission example functions are:

- **EMPLOYEE_ID**

- **GROUP_ID**

- **START_DATE**

- **END_DATE**

The Commission example functions and the parameters that they use appear in the following table.

Commission Example Functions and Parameters

Functions	Parameters
Ordered Amount	EMPLOYEE_ID
Ordered Amount	START_DATE
Ordered Amount	END_DATE
Canceled Amount	EMPLOYEE_ID
Canceled Amount	START_DATE

Functions	Parameters
Canceled Amount	END_DATE
Group Bonus	START_DATE
Group Bonus	END_DATE
Group Bonus	GROUP_ID

The essential concepts that this illustrates are:

- **Functions** can accept **parameters**.

- The same parameters can be used in many functions.

Context and Context Parameters

A context is a basically a grouping mechanism, whose main task is to provide an efficient way of passing parameters to functions.

Each formula is defined as belonging to a context.

If the formula calls any functions with parameters, how does the function receive values for those parameters? The formula execution passes values to the function parameters via **context parameters**.

Context parameters form a pool of all the parameters that are needed for all functions to be executed by all the formulas belonging to that context. The name of each context parameter must be the same as the name of the corresponding function parameter. You can use a validation procedure to verify that the formula parameters and context parameters match.

> **Note:** All contexts and formulas for lease and loan transactions are associated with either a contract or a line in the contract. If the source PL/SQL functions contain the parameters **P_CONTRACT_ID** and **P_LINE_ID**, you do not need to have context parameters corresponding to these two parameters.

For each context parameter, there must be a special internal PL/SQL function, **GET_<par>_VALUE** (where **<par>** is the actual parameter name). At formula execution time, the internal PL/SQL function calculates a value for the context parameter and passes it to the formula function.

The advantage of this mechanism is that, when a formula is executed, each context parameter is evaluated once and is then passed to possibly many functions being

executed by the formula.

Context Parameters for the Commission Formula

The context parameters for the Commission Formula are the parameters needed for all of the functions—**Ordered Amount**, **Canceled Amount**, and **Group Bonus**—namely:

- **EMPLOYEE_ID**

- **GROUP_ID**

- **START_DATE**

- **END_DATE**

As you can see from the table Commission Example Functions and Parameters, three of the parameters are used more than once during the execution of the Commission Formula. However, because the formula executes within a context, and each of the parameters is also a context parameter, the parameters are only evaluated once.

How a Formula Executes

The following example shows the sequence of how a formula executes.

1. If the formula contains a **function** (for clarity, this also refers to the **formula function**), the formula engine looks at each parameter of the function.

2. For each function parameter, the formula engine looks for the corresponding **CONTEXT PARAMETER**.

3. For each context parameter, the formula engine executes the internal PL/SQL **GET_<par>_VALUE** function and passes the value returned from this internal function to the formula function parameter.

4. This continues until the formula produces a result.

Net Investment Value Formula Example

The Net Investment Value formula is:

```
Net Investment Value := Receivables + Residuals - Unearned Income
```

Each of the three operands—Receivables, Residuals and Unearned Income—derives its value from a similarly-named function.

FUNCTION GET_LEASE_RECEIVABLE

The following example shows the source function for the Receivables operand.

```
( p_contract_id IN NUMBER, p_line_id IN NUMBER )

RETURN NUMBER

IS

v_lease_rec NUMBER;

CURSOR get_lease_rec IS

SELECT NVL(SUM(c.amount),0)

FROM   okl_streams_v  a,  okl_strm_type_v  b,  okl_strm_elements_v  c

WHERE  c.stm_id = a.id  AND b.id = a.sty_id

AND  b.name = 'Rent' AND c.stream_element_date >= SYSDATE

AND a.khr_id = p_contract_id;

BEGIN

OPEN  get_lease_rec;

FETCH get_lease_rec INTO v_lease_rec;

CLOSE get_lease_rec;

RETURN v_lease_rec;

END GET_LEASE_RECEIVABLE;
```

General Setup Steps for a Formula with Operand Functions

The general steps for setting up a formula with at least one operand function, which contains parameters in addition to P_CONTRACT_ID and P_LINE_ID, are:

1. Write the Source PL/SQL Function To Use in a Formula.

2. Register the Source PL/SQL Function.

3. Register the Function Parameters (register them in Oracle Lease Management).

4. Create the Context (first-time only for a particular context).

5. Create the Context Parameters.

6. Write the Internal Functions for the Context Parameters.

7. Create the (Formula Function type) Operand.

8. Create the Formula.

9. Validate the Formula. (strongly recommended)

You can follow the sequence exactly as shown in the preceding list.

Alternatively, you can first perform steps 4 through 6, then steps 1 to 3, then step 7. Step 8 must be the last mandatory step that you perform. Step 9—formula validation— is optional, but it is strongly recommended to perform this step.

> **Important:** If your source function contains only the standard **contract** and **line id** parameters, you do not need to perform all the steps.
>
> Specifically, in this simpler case, you can omit steps 3, 5, and 6, that is, the steps which relate to function parameters and context parameters.

The example formula in the following pages uses two parameters **PMR1** and **PARAMETER2**, both of which are numeric, in addition to the standard **contract** and **line id** parameters.

Write the Source PL/SQL Function To Use in a Formula

The topics in this section include:

- Code Example of a Sample Source

- Register the Source PL/SQL Function

- Register the Function Parameters

- Create the Context

- Create the Context Parameters

- Write the Internal Functions for the Context Parameters

- Create the (Formula Function type) Operand

- Create the Formula

- Create or Edit Operand Labels

- Validate the Formula

Code Example of a Sample Source

Here is the coding for a sample source PL/SQL function **SFNC1**, which has both the standard lease-oriented parameters **P_CONTRACT_ID** and **P_LINE_ID** as input parameters, as well as the special parameters **PMR1** and **PARAMETER2**.

FUNCTION SFNC1(

```
P_CONTRACT_ID IN NUMBER,

P_LINE_IDIN NUMBER,

PMR1 IN NUMBER,

PARAMETER2IN NUMBER

) return number

IS

v_pre_tax_yield  number;

BEGIN

select nvl(pre_tax_yield,0)

into v_pre_tax_yield

from  okl_k_headers_v

where id=p_contract_id ;

RETURN (20 *(PMR1 + PARAMETER2) + v_pre_tax_yield) ;

END ;
```

Register the Source PL/SQL Function

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Functions

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click Create.

2. Enter the Name for the function, and optionally, the Description.

3. Enter the Effective From date, and optionally the Effective To date.

4. Select the Source Function you are registering.

5. Click Create.

Register the Function Parameters

After the function is created, if it contains parameters other than the standard **contract** and **line id** parameters, then you must register the non-standard parameters with Oracle Lease Management.

To do this, you must:

1. Search for the function.

2. Select the function.

3. Choose to create or edit function parameters.

You must perform all of the following steps for each non-standard function parameter.

Prerequisites

You have created the function and it contains parameters other than the standard **contract** and **line id** parameters.

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Functions

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Search for the function.

2. In the Results panel, click the function name hypertext link.

3. Click the Function Parameters button.

4. In the Function Parameters area, enter the Sequence of the function parameter.

5. Enter the parameter name.

6. If the function parameter has a static value in the source function, enter this value in

the Static Value field.

7.   Click Create.

Create the Context

Each formula executes within a context. A context is basically a container for formulas that allows for the efficient passing of parameter values to the functions of a formula.

If the formula that you want to create does not have a context to be associated with, you must create the context.

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Contexts

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1.   Click Create.

2.   Enter the context Name, and optionally the Description.

3.   Click Create.

Create the Context Parameters

For each non-standard function parameter that you register with Oracle Lease Management, you must create a context parameter with exactly the same name as the function parameter. For more information on registering non-standard function parameters, see Create the Context.

To do this, you must:

1.   Search for the context,

2.   Select the context,

3.   Choose to create or edit context parameters.

You must perform all of the following steps for each context parameter.

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Contexts

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1.   Search for the context.

2. In the Results panel, click the context name hypertext link.

3. Click the Context Parameters button.

4. In the Context Parameters area, enter the Parameter name.

5. Click Create.

Write the Internal Functions for the Context Parameters

Now we need to define the internal PL/SQL function that returns the context parameter's run-time value.

> **Note:** If function requires any parameters other than **contract_id** and **line_id**, then you must create a context with the required additional parameters from the seeded parameters.

The function must have the name **GET_[PARAMETER]_VALUE**, where **[PARAMETER]** is the parameter name.

The function must be in the package **OKL_FORMULAFUNCTION_PVT**.

The internal functions must have **p_contract_id** and **p_line_id** as input parameters.

The following two code samples show the internal functions related to the parameters **PMR1** and **PARAMETER2**, which in both examples, returns the number 1:

FUNCTION GET_PMR1_VALUE

```
( p_contract_id IN number,  p_line_id    IN number )

return number

IS

BEGIN

RETURN 1;

END GET_PMR1_VALUE;
```

FUNCTION GET_PARAMETER2_VALUE

```
( p_contract_id  IN number,  p_line_id  IN number )

return number
```

```
IS

BEGIN

RETURN 1;

END GET_PARAMETER2_VALUE;
```

Create the (Formula Function type) Operand

Here you define an operand **OKLOPRND** of type Formula Function, which uses the function **OKLFUNC** registered in step 2 of Register the Function Parameters.

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Operands

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click Create.

2. Enter the Name for the operand, and optionally, the Description.

3. Enter the Effective From date, and optionally, the Effective To date.

4. In the Operand Type field, select Formula Function.

5. In the Function Name field, select the name of the function you registered.

6. Click Create.

Create the Formula

Each formula must be created within a context. As you create the formula, you must specify the context name for the formula.

You must enter the formula string, which is an arithmetic expression consisting of labels of operands and the symbols **+ - * / ( ).**

Once you have created an operand it is available to be used in a formula string. However you do not enter the operand name itself into the formula string, instead you must create a *label* for the operand, and use the label in the formula string. Basically, an operand label is a shortcut or alias for an operand.

The procedure for creating the formula consists of a two-stage process:

• Create the formula, including the formula string containing operand labels and symbols. You might or might not have created the operand labels at this point.

- If the operand labels have not been created, create the operand labels.

The following description of creating a formula assumes that operand labels have not been created.

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Formulas

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Click Create.

2. Enter the formula Name, and optionally, the Description.

3. Enter the Effective To date, and optionally, the Effective From date.

4. Select the Context for this formula.

5. Enter your formula in the String field, consisting of labels of operands and the symbols **+ - * / ( ).**

    > **Note:** You can enter operand label names that you have not yet created.

6. Click Create.

Create or Edit Operand Labels

After you have created the formula and formula string, you create the operand labels. The following steps show you how to create operand labels.

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Search for the formula.

2. Select the formula.

3. Choose to create or edit formula operands (this final step is where you actually create or edit the operand labels used in the formula string).

Prerequisites

You have created the formula and formula string.

Navigation

Setup > Formulas > Formulas

Steps

You must perform all of the following steps for each formula operand.

1. Search for the formula.

2. In the Results panel, click the formula name hypertext link.

3. Click the Formula Operands button.

4. In the Formula Operands area, enter the Label for the operand name.

5. Select the operand to associate with the label.

6. Click Create.

Validate the Formula

Validation of the formula is optional, but recommended to verify its correctness. The validation procedures checks:

- Recursion—whether any one of the functions calls itself.

- Whether there is a correct context parameter for each of the function parameters used by all the formulas of the context, that is, the name and type of the parameters must match.

The full validation procedure also lets you see the values of your context parameters and operands, as well as the evaluated formula result.

For completeness, the following set of steps shows the full validation procedure.

Navigation

Setup > Formula Engine > Validation...Formula Validation page

Steps

Perform the following steps:

1. Select the Context and the Formula name.

2. Select the Contract.

3. Optionally select the Line Number.

4. Click the Validate button.

   The example page following shows that there was no recursion nor context group parameter mismatch.

5. Click Next to go to the next page.

The Formula Context Parameters Value page appears. This shows the run-time context parameter values.

6. Click Next to go to the next page.

   The Evaluate Formula page shows the formula result and operand value.

   In the example, the context parameters **PMR1** and **PARAMETER2** both return a value of 1.

   The coding for the function OKLOPRND appears in Write the Source PL/SQL Function To Use in a Formula........).

   Assuming that the pre_tax_yield for the contract is null, the function **OKLOPRND** returns **(20*(1+1) + 0)**, that is, **40**.

E

Seeded Contract Classification Parameters

This appendix covers the following topics:

- Contract Classification Parameters

Contract Classification Parameters

The following table shows the seeded qualities and quality values, which must be added to a product template and product, so that contracts that are associated with the product are correctly classified.

Seeded Qualities and Quality Values

Contract Type	Quality (to be added to the product template)	Quality Description	Quality Value (to be added to the product)	Quality Value Description
Investor Agreement	INVESTOR	Investor Agreement Classification	SECURITIZATION	Securitization
-	-	-	SYNDICATION	Syndication
Lease or Loan Contract	LEASE	Lease Book Classification	LEASEDF	Direct Finance Lease
-	-	-	LEASEOP	Operating Lease
-	-	-	LEASEST	Sales Type Lease
-	-	-	LOAN	Loan

Contract Type	Quality (to be added to the product template)	Quality Description	Quality Value (to be added to the product)	Quality Value Description
-	-	-	LOAN-REVOLVING	Loan-Revolving
-	TAXOWNER	Tax Owner	LESSOR	Lessor
-	-	-	LESSEE	Lessee
	INTEREST CALCULATION BASIS	Interest Calculation Basis	FIXED	
	-	-	FLOAT	
	-	-	REAMORT	
	-	-	FLOAT FACTORS	
	-	-	CATCHUP/CLEANUP	
	REVENUE RECOGNITION METHOD	Revenue Recognition Method	STREAMS	
	-	-	ESTIMATED AND BILLED	
	-	-	ACTUAL	

Each Oracle Lease Management contract must have a product, and each product must have a product template.

In order to classify contracts, first you must add one or more of the seeded qualities to a product template.

Within a single product template, you can have:

- the quality Investor for investor agreements

- the four qualities of Lease, Taxowner, Interest Calculation Basis, and Revenue

Recognition Method, for lease or loan contracts.

Subsequently, when you create a product using the product template, you must assign one of the seeded quality values for each seeded quality in the associated product template.

> **Note:** The only way to assign a lease book classification, tax owner, interest calculation basis, or revenue recognition method, to a contract is through the *product*. To change one of these values on a contract, you must select a different *product* for the contract, with different values.

For lease and loan contracts, the following table shows the valid tax owner options allowed for each lease book classification.

Valid Lease Book Classification/Tax Owner Combinations

Lease Book Classification	Tax Owner Options
Direct Finance Lease	Lessor, Lessee
Operating Lease	Lessor
Sales Type Lease	Lessor, Lessee
Loan	Lessee
Loan-Revolving	Lessee

F

Multi-GAAP Product Combinations

This appendix covers the following topics:

- Product Combinations for Local and Reporting Books

Product Combinations for Local and Reporting Books

The following table shows the book classification combinations in products allowed for implementing multi-GAAP functionality in Oracle Lease Management:

Product Combinations for Local and Reporting Books

Book Classification for Local product	Book Classification for Reporting product
Operating Lease	Direct Finance Lease
Operating Lease	Sales Type Lease
Operating Lease	Loan
Operating Lease	Operating Lease
Direct Finance Lease	Direct Finance Lease
Direct Finance Lease	Sales Type Lease
Direct Finance Lease	Loan
Direct Finance Lease	Operating Lease
Sales Type Lease	Direct Finance Lease

Book Classification for Local product	Book Classification for Reporting product
Sales Type Lease	Sales Type Lease
Sales Type Lease	Loan
Sales Type Lease	Operating Lease
Loan	Direct Finance Lease
Loan	Sales Type Lease
Loan	Loan
Loan	Operating Lease

G

Seeded Business Events For Lease Contract Authoring

This appendix covers the following topics:

- Seeded Business Events For Authoring Lease Contracts

Seeded Business Events For Authoring Lease Contracts

By default these business events are not active. You must enable them to make use of them.

Number	Name	Data Passed
1.	Create Contract	Contract ID, User ID, User ID, Date of event
2.	Update Contract	Contract ID, User ID, Date of event
3.	Create Party	Contract ID, User ID, Party ID, Date of event
4.	Update Party	Contract ID, User ID, Party ID, Date of event
5.	Remove Party	Contract ID, User ID, Party ID, Date of event
6.	Create Asset	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event
7.	Remove Asset	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event
8.	Update Asset	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event

Number	Name	Data Passed
9.	Create Asset Book Depreciation	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Book Code
10.	Update Asset Book Depreciation	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Book Code
11.	Create Asset Tax Depreciation	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event
12.	Update Asset Tax Depreciation	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event
13.	Remove Asset Tax Depreciation	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event
14.	Update Taxes, Property Tax	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event
15.	Create Serial Numbers	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Serial Number
16.	Update Serial Numbers	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Serial Number
17.	Remove Serial Numbers	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Serial Number
18.	Create Supplier Invoice	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Party ID
19.	Update Supplier Invoice	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Party ID
20.	Update Filing for Liens, Title, & Registration	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event
21.	Create Subsidies	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Subsidy ID
22.	Update Subsidies	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Subsidy ID

Number	Name	Data Passed
23.	Remove Subsidies	Contract ID, User ID, Asset ID, Date of event, Subsidy ID
24.	Create Fee	Contract ID, User ID, Fee Line ID, Date of event
25.	Remove Fee	Contract ID, User ID, Fee Line ID, Date of event
26.	Update Fee	Contract ID, User ID, Fee Line ID, Date of event
27.	Create Fee by Asset	Contract ID, User ID, Fee Line ID, Date of event, Asset ID
28.	Update Fee by Asset	Contract ID, User ID, Fee Line ID, Date of event, Asset ID
29.	Remove Fee by Asset	Contract ID, User ID, Fee Line ID, Date of event, Asset ID
30.	Update Expense	Contract ID, User ID, Fee Line ID, Date of event
31.	Update Passthrough	Contract ID, User ID, Fee Line ID, Date of event
32.	Create Service	Contract ID, User ID, Service Line ID, Date of event
33.	Remove Service	Contract ID, User ID, Service Line ID, Date of event
34.	Update Fee	Contract ID, User ID, Service Line ID, Date of event
35.	Update Passthrough	Contract ID, User ID, Service Line ID, Date of event
36.	Update Expense	Contract ID, User ID, Service Line ID, Date of event
37.	Create Serviced Asset	Contract ID, User ID, Service Line ID, Date of event, Asset ID
38.	Update Serviced Asset	Contract ID, User ID, Service Line ID, Date of event, Asset ID
39.	Remove Serviced Asset	Contract ID, User ID, Service Line ID, Date of event, Asset ID
40.	Create from Service Contract	Contract ID, User ID, Service Line ID, Date of event, Service Contract ID, Service Contract Line ID

Number	Name	Data Passed
41.	Create Usage	Contract ID, User ID, UBB ID, Date of event
42.	Remove Usage	Contract ID, User ID, UBB ID, Date of event
43.	Update Usage	Contract ID, User ID, UBB ID, Date of event
44.	Add Asset	Contract ID, User ID, UBB ID, Date of event, Asset ID
45.	Update Asset	Contract ID, User ID, UBB ID, Date of event, Asset ID
46.	Validate Contract	Contract ID, User ID, Date of event
47.	Streams Launched (Launch Request)	Contract ID, User ID, Date of event
48.	Streams Completed (Request Completed)	Contract ID, User ID, Date of event
49.	Generate Journal Entries	Contract ID, User ID, Date of event
50.	Submit for Approval	Contract ID, User ID, Date of event
51.	Book Contract	Contract ID, User ID, Date of event
52.	Rebook Launched (Launch Request)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event
53.	Rebook Completed (Request Completed)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event
54.	Mass Rebook Launched (Launch Request)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event
55.	Mass Rebook Completed (Request Completed)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event

Number	Name	Data Passed
56.	Split Contract Launched (Launch Request)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event
57.	Split Contract Completed (Request Completed)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event
58.	Reverse Contract Launched (Launch Request)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event
59.	Reverse Contract Completed (Request Completed)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event
60.	Split Assets by Units Launched (Launch Request)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event, Asset ID
61.	Split Assets by Units Completed (Request Completed)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event, Asset ID
62.	Split Assets by Components Launched (Launch Request)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event, Asset ID
63.	Split Assets by Components Completed (Request Completed)	Contract ID, User ID, Revision Date, Date of event, Asset ID
64.	Create Credit Line	Credit Line ID, Date of event
65.	Update Credit Line	Credit Line ID, Date of event
66.	Create Credit Limit	Credit Line ID, Date of event, CreditLimit ID
67.	Remove Credit Limit	Credit Line ID, Date of event, CreditLimit ID
68.	Update Credit Limit	Credit Line ID, Date of event, CreditLimit ID

Number	Name	Data Passed
69.	Activate Credit Line	Credit Line ID, Date of event
70.	Create Funding Request	Contract ID, User ID, Funding Request ID, Date of event
71.	Update Funding Request	Contract ID, User ID, Funding Request ID, Date of event
72.	Cancel Funding Request	Contract ID, User ID, Funding Request ID, Date of event
73.	Submit Funding Request	Contract ID, User ID, Funding Request ID, Date of event
74.	Update Filing	Contract ID, User ID, Terms ID, Date of event

Glossary

$1 buyout

The end of term purchase option given to the lessee where the fixed purchase option is at a value of $1. A $1 buyout is used in conjunction with a $1 purchase option.

accrual accounting

Recognizes economic events regardless of when actual cash transactions occur. The opposite of cash basis accounting.

advance rent

Rent received at the start of the lease that will be adjusted against the last rents.

advance/arrears indicator

Shows if the rents are billed in advance or in arrears of the rental period.

amortization

The systematic method for recording financial elements to income or expense over a defined period, typically the lease or loan term.

approver

The person who is authorized to approve the document before the next activity may be carried out.

asset item

Anything you make, purchase, or sell including components, subassemblies, finished products, or supplies that carries a cost and is valued in your asset subinventories.

articles

Textual sections of contract terms and conditions.

as-due basis

An event initiated based on when the invoice is due.

asset disposition

Sale or disposal of assets.

authoring

A process of creating a contract.

auto-invoice

The process of automatically invoicing the lessee for a payment due. This process can be automated by running a concurrent program.

auto-terminate

The process of automatically terminating a lease contract when it reaches its end of term. This process is automated by running a concurrent program.

billed basis

An event initiated based on when the item is billed.

billing

The process of notifying the responsibility party of amounts due.

billing frequency

The frequency with which bills are presented to a customer.

booking

The process of preparing and recording accounting records associated with a contract.

broker

A person or organization acting as an agent to vendor, dealer, or lessor in negotiating a transaction.

buck-out lease

Full payout, net leases structured with a bargain purchase option for the lessee to purchase the equipment for one dollar at the expiration of the lease. These leases are often referred to as dollar buyout or buck-out leases.

business unit

A business unit is an entity created by a company to manage a certain segment or segments of its business. The business unit can span multiple product lines and geographies.

buyout

customer buys equipment from lessor at the end of the contract's full life.

buyout amount

This is the amount necessary for the customer to pay in order to consider the contract paid in full.

cancellation

When a customer has the contractual right to end an agreement (that is, the customer is at the end of term in month-to-month status, non-appropriation clause, or rental agreement).

capital lease

A type of lease classified and accounted for by a lessee as a purchase and by the lessor as a sale or financing. It must meet at least one of the criteria outlined in paragraph 7 of FASB 13. It is treated as debt and an offsetting depreciable asset for book accounting purposes.

capitalized cost

The cost of equipment to be leased plus various fees, charges, or interest that may be added to the equipment cost. The total capitalized cost--or basis--is the amount upon which the tax benefits or depreciation on the equipment are based.

cash basis

An event initiated based on when cash is received. A related pass-through disbursement is created when cash is applied against an invoice.

catch-all

A placeholder used at the top of a territory hierarchy when no other is defined in Territory Management.

closed item

An invoiced item that was paid.

collateral

The additional security provided by the borrower for availing the credit facility provided by the lender. The additional security is normally in the form of assets which are, in addition to the asset, financed by the loan or lease.

From a customer service perspective, collateral also is a static fulfillment document that doesn't contain merged data. It is usually some sort of marketing brochure or some other document. It is sent in an email as an attachment. It is often called a deliverable in the marketing applications.

concurrent program

An instance of an execution file, along with parameter definitions and incompatibilities. Concurrent programs use concurrent program executables to locate the correct execution file. Several concurrent programs may use the same execution file to perform their specific tasks, each having different parameter defaults and incompatibilities.

consolidated billing

One or more billing items combined into one group for invoicing purposes.

consolidated counter

A logical counter that groups the counters belonging to more than one contract. These counters need to be consolidated into one consolidated record as per customer requirement.

context

A context is a pool of global variables that are passed as parameters to functions. An instance of context should exist to execute Formulae.

context assembler

A Context Assembler is a PL/SQL procedure that creates a new instance of a context and populates values of context parameters. Each external entity which wants to use the Contracts Formula Engine must have its Context Assembler and Context.

context parameter

A context parameter is a variable of a context that is be passed as a parameter to functions. An instance of context parameter is created whenever a new instance of context object is required.

contract

A written, signed, Legal Agreement between/among trading partners that has financial, legal, and industry-specific operational consequences.

contract activation

A series of steps performed on an authored contract that culminates with a booked contract that is ready to be billed.

contract ID

Unique identifier of a contract.

contract status

The state of the contract. Possible values: new, passed, complete, incomplete, pending approval, booked, under revision, evergreen, litigation hold, bankruptcy hold, expired,

terminated, reversed, amended, abandoned

contract validation

The application of various QA logic and business rules to a contract to insure it meets business requirements.

contracts formula engine thread

A formula is executed within an instance of a context. Operands of the formula can call other formulae and functions that are executed within the same instance of the context. This process is referred to as the contract formula engine thread.

contract shell

A contract in inactive state with minimal data contained in it. The minimal data is customer information and product category.

coterminous

All assets on a contract terminate at the same time, regardless of their start dates.

cure amount

The amount due to satisfy a customer's past due rents. The payment may be required from a vendor or other third party.

customization

Customizations are enhancements to an Oracle applications system made to fit the needs of a specific user community.

DBA

Name company is Doing Business As.

dealer

The dealer, or supplier, supplies equipment or some kind of services for a transaction. Either one of them may be a party to the vendor program agreement. See Supplier.

direct debit

Direct Debit is a feature offered by banks to enable their customers, the lessors, to collect payments due to them directly from the lessee's bank. The lessee must authorize the lessor to withdraw the funds

due date

The date on which payment is due from the customer.

direct finance lease

Direct finance lease is a non-leveraged lease by a lessor (not a manufacturer or dealer) in which the lease meets any of the definitional criteria of a capital lease, plus certain additional criteria.

disposition

Sale or disposal of assets.

disbursement

Disbursements are payments to suppliers or other third parties for the cost of equipment, a prepayment facility with lessor, maintenance, insurance and other services. Some disbursements such as pass-through and investor payments are linked to billing events.

distribution

Defined group of accounting codes that determine debit and credit accounts that is affected in the General Ledger. A distribution may define percentage-wise allocation of funds between accounts.

distribution group

Distribution group is a logical grouping of distributions.

effective dates

Effective dates are the dates a record is effective or to be in use.

employee

A resource type that represents a person who is hired to work for a company. Employee resources can be input as resources in various pages available without installing the Human Resources Management System (HRMS).

end-of-term (EOT)

The end of the primary or renewal term. Unless specified otherwise, end-of-term refers to the end of the primary term.

end-of-term option

An option used to derive the future value component of the leasing pricing equations. It can be based on either the expected residual value or a purchase option. The value is assigned for specific combinations of contract term and items or item categories. The option is not used for termination quote calculation.

escalation

Actions in a process that increase in extent or intensity.

evergreen

Evergreen refers to a lease contract period past the initial term end date, when rents are still collected. Evergreen is the default contingent continuation of a lease after its contractual end-of-term, where a lessee continues to pay indefinitely.

The contract language includes an Evergreen Eligibility Clause, indicating the customer will be billed a rental amount indefinitely unless they provide the Equipment Return Notice by a certain date.

execution date

The strategy performance date. At the execution date a member of the assignment group executes the strategy and notes the action taken.

Also refers to the date a lease contract is signed.

exposure

The total amount of credit risk the lessor has with the customer. This amount is normally the amounts due, plus net investment value (NIV), plus approved credit not drawn down.

fair market value lease

A lease that includes an option for the lessee to either renew the lease at a fair market value, or purchase the equipment for its fair market value at the end of the lease term.

FASB

An acronym for Financial Accounting Standards Board.

FASB 13

The FASB's statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 13 is recognized as the accounting guideline for financial statement reporting of lease investments and/or liabilities.

FASB 109

The FASB's statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 109 supersedes FASB statement 96, Accounting for Income Taxes. This includes a basic principle that *the measurement of deferred tax assets is reduced, if necessary*.

financial product

A financial product in Oracle Lease Management groups together a set of attributes and rules based on which contracts are created. It is mandatory for every contract to be associated with a single product.

fixed rate

A contract with an interest rate factor that does not change during its life.

fixed purchase option

a pre-defined fixed price that is agreed to by the lessor/lessee while writing a contract.

flexfield

A flexible data field format that your organization can customize to your business needs without programming.

floor price

The targeted minimum amount acceptable for the sale of an asset.

FMV

An acronym for Fair Market Value. The price for which property is sold in an arms-length transaction between two unrelated parties. (See Fair Market Value Lease.)

form

Forms are a logical collection of fields, regions, and graphical components that appears on a single page. Oracle applications forms resemble paper forms used to run a business. You enter data by typing information into the form.

forms server

A Forms server is a type of application server that hosts the Forms server engine. It mediates between the desktop client and the database, providing input pages for the Forms-based products on the desktop client and creating or changing database records based on user actions.

formula

An arithmetic operation over operands.

formula counter

Formula type counters allow users to use simple math to derive the counter value. For example, you use a formula counter to track total number of copies made with photo copy machine, which provides both black and white copies and color copies.

full payout lease

A lease in which the full cost of the asset is recouped through the lease stream. The present value of the lease stream equals the initial product cost. The lessor assumes no residual value for the equipment at end of term. In essence, this is a loan to the lessor's customer, the lessee. However, by including a $1 end of term buyout, the lessor and lessee treat the transaction as a lease.

function

A function is a register of a function that returns a scalar numeric value.

function parameter

A function parameter passes a value to function. The function parameter gets its value from the corresponding context parameter. The context parameter comes from an instance of context in which the function is executed.

funding

Generally, funding is the process of paying a supplier for leased equipment.

general ledger

The General Ledger (GL) is the book of final entry summarizing all of a company's financial transactions through offsetting debit and credit accounts.

general loss provision

Loss Provisions and reserves established based on contract types and aging categories to offset write-offs for bad debts.

general reserve

See *general loss provision*.

gross remaining receivables

The remaining unpaid billed and not billed gross receivable at a point in time.

guaranteed residual

That portion of the residual that becomes guaranteed from a third party through the purchase of residual value insurance and is to be accounted for as accounts receivable rather than residual receivable.

guarantor

The entity that guarantees payments in the event of lessee default.

insurance premium

The amount paid or payable by the lessee to the lessor, and by the lessor to the insurance provider, for the insurance policy. It can be paid either I installments or upfront in a lump sum.

insurance provider

The insurance company or underwriter who insures the asset(s) on a lease. The insurance policy may be funded by either the lessor or the lessee, but the insurance provider is the financial institution that sells the policy and covers the asset.

interaction

An interaction is a touch point that occurs between a customer, a customer system, a resource, or a resource system. An example of a touch point is a phone call between an agent and a customer. Interactions include activities, media, and media items.

Interaction History

Interaction History (IH) provides Oracle applications with a common framework for capturing and accessing all interaction data associated with customer contacts. IH acts as the central repository and provides a consistent API for tracking all automated or agent-based customer interactions.

inventory item

Items you stock in inventory. You control inventory for inventory items by quantity and value. Typically, the inventory item remains an asset until you consume it. You recognize the cost of an inventory item as an expense when you consume it or sell it. You generally value the inventory for an item by multiplying the item standard cost by the quantity on hand.

investor

Investors are parties to syndicated contracts. For the purpose of this document, **investor** and **syndicated party** are interchangeable terms.

investor stake (%)

The amount an investor pays to acquire an interest in an investor agreement.

invoice

A bill sent to a customer, or a notice for the lessor to pay a disbursement to an investor.

invoice amount

Total amount of charges on an invoice.

invoice date

The date of the Oracle Receivables invoice. The invoice creation date, invoice date, invoice printing date, and the due dates can be different in any receivables system. In Lease Management, the invoice date and payment term derive the due date.

invoice format

Invoice format is a group of invoice types that specify how data is to appear on the invoices.

invoice generation

The process of creating an open receivables invoice within Oracle Receivables.

invoice parameters

Invoice Parameters specify rules for grouping transactions within an Oracle Lease Management invoice.

items

Items can be master documents, collateral, or attachments in fulfillment. Items are inserted in the body of an email. Items are selected from the list of all possible documents and collateral material available to the user from fulfillment templates.

IVR

Acronym for Interactive Voice Recognition.

journal entries

A set of financial data that is of significance for recording ledger transactions in accounting.

key flexfield

A key flexfield is a field format you can customize to enter multi-segment values such as part numbers, account numbers, location, and so on. Key flexfields relate to specific uses in Oracle applications.

late charge

An amount assessed as a result of the payment due on a contract not being received within a certain pre-set number of days from the due date.

late interest

Refers to the interest rate factor applied to an outstanding invoice amount from the time it is due until it is paid.

lease

A lease is a contract in which one party conveys the use of an asset to another party for a specific period of time for a predetermined payment amount.

lessee

User of the equipment being leased.

lessor

Owner of the equipment which is being leased.

lockbox

A service offered by banks to companies in which the company receives payments by mail to a post box office, and the bank picks up the payments several times a day,

deposits them into the company's account, and notifies the company of the deposit. Lockbox enables the company to put the money to work as soon as it is received.

lookup codes

Imbedded codes in Oracle Applications that enable you to define a feature prior to setup. These include defining article sets, contract roles, and so on.

margin

For variable interest rate, add margin to the base interest rate factor to determine the actual rate of interest. This is expressed as the number of basis points on top of the index rate.

master lease contract

A master lease contract is an (electronic) document, which contains leasing terms and conditions that, through reference to the master lease agreement number, can apply to contracts.

media

In Interaction History, media represents the communication channel through which an activity takes place. Examples can include: the phone, the fax machine, an ATM, or a cell phone.

messages

A message is an informative note maintained with the customer's invoice record. There are several types of messages, including the following: a permanent message, a one-time message, or a miscellaneous message.

meter read

Actual number of usage units from a counter at a point in time.

mill rate

The percentage tax rate in effect for property tax. (This applies to the USA only.)

net book value (NBV)

In terms of an operating lease, it is the original first cost, less accumulated book depreciation. The amount represents the lessor's investment in a lease.

net investment

The investment or equity, net of expected income, a lessor has in a transaction.

net present value (NPV)

The net present value (NPV) is the valuation method based on discounted cash flows.

NPV is calculated by discounting a series of future cash flows and summing the discounted amounts.

non-consolidated counter

A non-consolidated counter is assigned to each asset on a specific contract.

non termination write down

Creation of a loss provision on a contract without terminating the contract.

Notes

Notes is a tool that provides locations where you can specify more text detail, if needed. You can add a note to a task in Task Manager.

note status

There are three statuses available for notes in Oracle Applications:

- Private: Only the creator can view it.

- Public: The creator and others can read or write to it.

- Publish: Publishable over the Internet. Everyone can view it.

note text

A large text note, such as a customer's letter or directions.

note type

Note type is selected from a lookup table. You can add note types through the setup window. They provide a further categorization of notes based on a user's needs. Also, you can tie a note type to a source type and such note types are visible only to that mapped source. Therefore, you must choose between the entire list of note types that have been defined for your source and those which do not have any source type attached to them.

object

An object is any identifiable individual or thing. It can be physical, such as a telephone or PBX, or an abstract concept, such as a market campaign in Interaction History.

OEC

An acronym for Original Equipment Cost, which is the original cost of the leased equipment.

OKL

An acronym for the Oracle Lease Management product, as designated in the Oracle

applications database.

OLM

A general reference acronym for Oracle Lease Management, not to be confused with Oracle Learning Management.

open item

A receivable item that has not been paid.

operand

An operand is a register of an object that can take part in arithmetic operations. Operand can use formula, function or a regular expression as the source for its value.

operating agreement

1. An operating agreement is a mutual agreement between a lessor and vendor to work together and administer certain financing programs which set specific terms and conditions for future transactions. 2. For more complex business models, Oracle Lease Management enables a two-tier vendor agreement structure. The operating agreement serves as a parent to a program agreement. Operating agreements are not operating unit-specific. Therefore, they may act as parents to program agreements from various operating units and may have different primary parties than the program agreement.

operating lease

A lease which does not satisfy any of the criteria of a "capital lease" under local accounting principles.

partial termination

The amount a customer must pay for a subset of assets and a contract to terminate them and pay off all future amounts due.

payment in advance

Periodic payments due in advance of the rental period.

payment in arrears

Periodic payments due before the last day of the rental period.

payment level

A payment level is the number, frequency, and due amount for a specific time period.

payment method

Method used to facilitate and process payment.

PO Number

Purchase Order number.

principal balance

A loan concept, which can also be used in leasing vernacular, designating remaining gross receivable, less unearned finance charges.

private label

Private label products or services are typically those manufactured or provided by one company for offer under another company's brand.

product

Usually, financial product (not an asset; for example, not a piece of equipment).

product option

A property of a financial product that defines a value or allows the user to select a value from a set of values at the time of the lease authoring. Options are typically associated with specific terms and conditions that govern the behavior of contract transactions. At the time of authoring a contract, you can render an option as **required** or as **optional**. A typical option with multiple values associated with it might be **Interest Method** or **End-of-term Purchase** option.

product quality

A property of a financial product that is mandatory and, once selected, cannot be changed. Qualities are used for the purpose of categorization of products.

profile options

In Oracle Applications, profile options enable you to turn on or off specific functionality, such as integrations and processes, and allows you to set specific parameters that govern a process or transaction such as number of days before a task is due that the user is notified.

program agreement

An agreement between a lessor and a vendor such that the lessor provides financing for the vendor to its customers. The terms and conditions of the program agreement may govern aspects of the leases created as a result of the program.

property tax

Tax assessed for owning property.

pro-rate read

An actual reading, but received either before or after the due date. To use pro ration,

calculate a daily rate and then multiply that value to the number of days from the last meter read due date until the current meter read due date.

purchase option

An option given to the lessee to purchase the equipment from the lessor, usually as of a specified date. Options vary in type: Guaranteed Purchase Option (GPO), Bargain Purchase Option, Fair Market Value Option (FMV), Mid-Term Purchase Option.

quote history

This is the history of buyout quotes given to a customer.

rebooking

The process of altering an existing lease/loan transaction due to some financial change in the deal structure; rental payment change, credit extension, due date change, etc. New accounting entries or adjusting entries are made when the contract is reactivated.

re-amortization

Recalculation of rental payments on variable rate products as interest rates change.

recourse

The right of the lender/lessor to pursue payment from a third party if the lessee/borrower defaults.

regular counter

Physical counters found in tangible objects like automobiles, gas meters, photo copy machine, etc.

re-lease

Assets from previous leases that are placed onto a new lease.

remit-to address

Address where customers send in the payment for their invoices.

repurchase

Vendor or other third party agrees to purchase original asset when it comes off lease.

repurchase amount

The amount required from the vendor or third party to buy a transaction back. This amount is determined by pre-set calculation specified in the vendor agreement. This may vary form vendor to vendor.

residual amount

The estimated value of an asset at the end of a lease for which the lessee is not expected to pay.

residual value insurance

An insurance premium purchased from a third party so as to guarantee a portion of the residual value, which in turn is designated as a recovery of the capital cost and included in the FASB 13 test for classifying a leasing transaction.

residual write-down

Taken to reflect a drop in the expected market value of an asset at lease expiration.

resource

The basic element of the Resource Manager in Oracle Applications and is defined as people, places and things.

resource category

In Oracle Applications, any of five types of resources defined in Resource Manager: party, employee, partner, supplier contact, and other/to be hired (TBH).

Resource Manager

The Resource Manager is a tool used to define, access, and maintain all Oracle Applications resources.

responsibility

A responsibility is a level of authority in Oracle Applications that allows access only to those Oracle Applications functions and data appropriate to fulfill your role in the organization.

restructure

When an agreement is made with a customer to amend the current payment structure, usually to reduce regular payment amounts or extend the term.

role

Roles group various permissions at the page level and function level, are used to maintain application security.

role type

A role type is a group of related roles associated with a particular Oracle Applications module.

sales tax

Tax based on the sale of property by federal, state and local authorities.

sales-type lease

A lease in which the lessor is also the vendor (manufacturer or distributor) of the equipment.

salvage value

The accounting estimate of the asset value once it is depreciated over the term of the lease. This is typically based on an estimate of the future value, less a safety margin.

securitization

This is the process of selling the cash flows in a pool of assets to outside investors at a rate below the earning rate, enabling an accelerated gain to be recorded. The servicing and administration of the contracts for the pooled assets is normally retained by the lessor.

service (1)

a) Customer Service, the Lease Center view of Oracle Lease Management provided to a lessor's Customer Service agents who login using the Lease Center Agent profile. Lessees, vendors, and other interested parties typically telephone into lessor's call center to ask questions regarding specific account details.

b) Customer Self Service, web portal access to lessees so they can view their account and contract information. Set up by the lessor so that lessees can access their own account information, according to the lessor's information and security policies.

c) Vendor Self Service, web portal access to both vendor and customer contract and account information. Set up by the lessor so that vendors and suppliers can access their own account information, and information on lessees of their equipment, according to the lessor's information and security policies. (May update and enter some transactions.)

service (2)

Service contracts on leased equipment assets. (Also, Oracle Service Contracts is a separate Oracle E-Business Suite application that integrates with Oracle Lease Management.)

service and maintenance

Fees charged to a customer for servicing or warranting assets, such as extended warranty contracts.

specific provision or reserve

A loss provision or reserve, established to recognize potential impairment of the

collection of a specific receivable.

stipulated loss value table

A table indicating the amount to be paid to the lessor in case a leased asset is lost or destroyed.

straight-line depreciation

A form of depreciation whereby the owner of the equipment takes an equal amount of depreciation in each full year of the equipment's useful life or recovery period.

stream

A stream is a schedule of amounts and associated dates.

stream activity

Stream activity types describe the state of the stream. A stream can be ACTIVE, CURRENT, HISTORY, or WORKING.

stream element

A single amount and its corresponding date (i.e., a cash flow). A stream element is the line level detail of a stream. A stream can have multiple stream elements.

stream purpose

A stream purpose is an important attribute of a stream type that determines how Lease Management processes the stream. Lease Management recognizes streams based on their stream purpose name.

stream type

The functional name for a stream which relates to the attributes used to process a stream.

stream type subclass

Rent or Residual.

subledger

A book in which the monetary transactions related to a specific financial function of a business are posted in the form of debits and credits before the financial transaction is posted in the General Ledger.

supplier

Oracle Payables uses the term "Supplier" for vendors, so "Vendor" and "Supplier" are used interchangeably for the purpose of this document, unless specified otherwise.

syndicated contract

Investors other than the lessor invest a stake in the contract in return for a portion of the rent and related receivables. Oracle Lease Management makes a disbursement to an investor in relationship to the billing. Information about the investment and disbursement method is setup when the investor agreement is authored.

syndication

The selling off of a deal, or portion of a deal, to outside investors. This arrangement reduces the lessor's risk and accelerates the return on the deal. See Investor Agreements in the *Oracle Lease Management User's Guide*.

system administrator

The system administrator is the person who manages administrative tasks in Oracle Applications, such as registering new users and defining system printers, using the system administrator responsibility.

task

A task is a discrete unit of work that is assigned to one or more individuals. Tasks are managed by the Task Manager. Tasks are often scheduled events and have defined expirations.

task group templates

A task group template is a grouping of different task templates defined during setup in Task Manager.

Task Manager

Task Manager is a tool used to manage tasks throughout other applications. Task Manager provides a mechanism for tasks to be created, assigned, managed, sorted, and prioritized to provide timely response to customer issues.

task owner

An owner is the person (resource) that creates and is responsible for the task.

task type

A task type defines the nature of the task such as a callback or a meeting.

terminal rental adjustment clause (TRAC)

A provision in a lease that permits or requires an adjustment of rentals according to the amount realized by a lessor upon a sale of the leased equipment. This allows the lessor to guarantee a terminal (residual) value while still claiming tax ownership on a lease. This benefit only applies to certain classes of vehicles.

termination

The process of ending a leasing transaction with the lessee.

territory

A territory is an organizational domain with boundaries defined by attributes of customers, products, services, and resources in Territory Management.

territory administrator

This person administers the specific and periodic duties of Territory Management.

Territory Manager (TM)

Territory Manager is a tool that helps manages territories.

TCA

An acronym for Trading Community Architecture. This is a standardized approach in Oracle Applications for handling customer and other party information.

termination quote

Termination quotes allow contracts or assets on a contract to terminate early or at the expiration of a contract. Termination quotes identify the financial impact of the termination. The various business rules specified in a contract's terms and conditions are the basis of calculating the financial impact of a termination quote.

terms and conditions

Financial and legal arrangements that are agreed to by parties of a contract.

transaction business category (TBC)

A business classification provided by Oracle E-Business Tax to identify and classify business transactions.

transfer and assumption

When a contract obligation and use of leased assets are transferred from one party to another party with the lessor's consent.

transaction type

An event in Oracle Lease Management relating to a contract or asset.

UBB

An acronym for Usage Based Billing. Rental payments are derived in part or in full, based on a specific rate per number of units used or counted.

user

A user is any person who needs access to any application, including various types of customers, partners, suppliers, and employees.

user ID

The User ID is a combination of a user name and its password.

user profile

User profiles, which are associated with responsibilities, are a set of user interfaces that give users access to their personal data and preferences.

user type

A user type is a category of users that caters to the specific needs of an application's business requirements in User Management. User types allow flexible and extensible ways for defining, categorizing and implementing behavior of users. A user type is associated to only one template, one responsibility, zero or one approval and zero or more roles.

value added tax (VAT)

An indirect tax on consumer expenditure that is collected on business transactions and imports. VAT is charged at each stage (e.g. production, distribution, retail, etc.) in the supply of products. If a customer is registered for VAT and uses the supplies for taxable business purposes, they will receive credit for this VAT paid. The broad effect is that VAT is actually borne by the final consumer of a product.

vendor

A supplier of equipment or services. A vendor can be a manufacturer, reseller, distributor, or dealer.

vendor program

An agreement between the lessor and a vendor to create a specific financing program for the vendor's customers who desire financing. The terms and conditions of the vendor program may govern aspects of the deals created as a result of the program.

warrant

A warrant is an option to purchase an equity instrument. Lessors may accept warrants as collateral on deals.

workflow

A complete workflow management system that supports business process definition and automation in Oracle Applications. Typically, workflow is used for contract approval, change requests, and notifications.

workflow attributes

Workflow attributes control the behavior of the workflow.

workflow monitor

The workflow monitor is a Java based tool used for administering and viewing workflow process.

write off

When a contract is deemed uncollectable, the loss is recognized for accounting purposes by charging off future receivables and/or investments.

yield

A measurement of profitability obtained from a series of cash flows. This may represent the lessor's return on invested funds.

90% Test

A Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) test, which indicates whether or not 90% or more of the cost of the leased equipment, at lease inception, will be recovered through the present valuation of minimum lease payments using the lessee's incremental borrowing rate.

Index

about, 6-118
    contract approval, 6-118
    engine, 6-118
    notifications, 6-118
work queue
    about, 5-16
    See also Universal Work Queue., 5-16

X

XML gateway
    pricing engine integration set up, 6-110

Y

year, define fiscal, 4-4